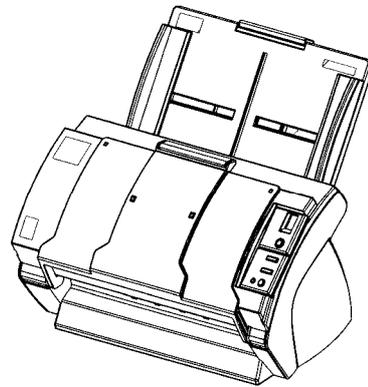


fi-5120C, Image Scanner fi-512PR, Imprinter (option) Maintenance Manual



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL	DRAW. No. P1PA03484-B00X/6	CUST.
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.			
07	Nov.26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.			
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.			
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	1/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai			

Revision Record		
Edition	Date published	Revised contents
D01	July 29, 2005	Draft 01 version
01	August 19, 2005	01 version released.
02	February 20, 2006	P71: Belt tension adjustment P114, 122: For RoHS compliance P114, 125: "AC Cordset UK" added. P114, 122, 160, 161: Part numbers modified.
03	April 4, 2006	P114, 125: Model names added.
04	July 28, 2006	P124: AC adapter photo changed.
05	October 17, 2006	P72: Belt tension value changed.
06	September 5, 2007	P29: Sensor names revised. P48: A part name revised. P84: Removal procedure revised. P117: Remarks added.
07	November 26, 2007	P160, 161: Control PCA for Imprinter (Part number) changed.

The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

All rights reserved. Copyright© PFU LIMITED 2005-2007

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Oakda	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	2/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

Preface

This manual provides the technical information such as maintenance, troubleshooting procedure and parts replacement procedure for field Engineers on fi-5120C image scanner.

This manual is for use as a maintenance tool only.

For information that is not contained in this manual, refer to the following manuals:

Item	Manuals	P/N *	Remarks
1	fi-5120C/fi-5220C Image Scanner Operator's Guide	P3PC-1322-xxEN	Attached to fi-5120C/fi-5220C (CD-ROM)
2	fi-5120C/fi-5220C Image Scanner Getting Started	P3PC-1312-xxEN	Attached to fi-5120C/fi-5220C (booklet)
3	fi-512PR Imprinter Operator's Guide	P3PC-1332-xxEN	Attached to fi-512PR (CD-ROM)
4	fi-5120C/fi-512PR Illustrated Parts Catalog	P4PA03484-B00X/6	

* xx represents revision number of the manuals.

Convention

Special information, such as warnings, cautions, is indicated as follows:

WARNING

This indication alerts operators to an operation that, if not strictly observed, may result in severe injury or death.

CAUTION

This indication alerts operators to an operation that, if not strictly observed, may result in safety hazards to personnel or damage to equipment.

NOTICE

NOTICE provides 'how-to' tips or suggestions to help you perform a procedure correctly.

General note:

Be careful not to power off the scanner while communicating with the host computer. In case that the scanner is accidentally powered off during communication with the host, follow the procedure below:

1. Power off the host computer
2. Power on the scanner.
3. Power on the host computer.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	3/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

Trademarks

Microsoft, Windows, and Windows NT are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

ISIS, QuickScan and their respective logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pixel Translations, a division of Captiva Software Corporation in the United States.

Other product names are the trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

How Trademarks are Indicated in This Manual

References to operating systems (OS) and applications are indicated as follows:

Windows 95: Microsoft® Windows® 95 operating system.

Windows 98: Microsoft® Windows® 98 operating system.

Windows Me: Microsoft® Windows® Millennium Edition operating system.

Windows 2000: Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.

Windows XP: Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system,
Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.

Windows NT 4.0: Microsoft® Windows NT® Server operating system Version 4.0
Microsoft® Windows NT® Workstation operating system Version 4.0

Where there is no distinction between the different versions of the above operating system, the general term “Windows” is used.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Oakada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	4/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

Contents

Chapter 1 OVERVIEW.....	9
1-1 Specification	9
1-1-1 Scanner Specifications	10
1-1-2 Environmental Specifications	11
1-1-3 Appearance	11
1-1-4 Document Specifications	15
1-1-5 Multi feed Detection Condition.....	16
1-2 System Configuration	17
1-3 Unpacking the scanner.....	18
1-4 Installing the scanner	19
1-4-1 For safety installation	19
1-4-2 Installation.....	20
1-5 Basic Operation	21
1-5-1 Turn ON/OFF the Scanner	21
1-5-2 Loading Documents on the ADF for Scanning	22
1-6 Daily Care.....	24
1-6-1 Cleaning the ADF	24
1-7 Replacing the consumables	26
1-7-1 Consumables	26
1-7-2 Pad ASSY replacement	26
1-7-3 Pick roller replacement	27
1-7-4 Resetting Consumable Counters	28
Chapter 2 Description of scanner operation	29
2-1 ADF unit.....	29
2-2 Reading station	30
2-3 Controller.....	31
2-4 Electric Component Block Diagram.....	32
Chapter 3 Troubleshooting	33
3-1 Self-diagnosis function	33
3-1-1 Scanner status display and self-diagnostics at power-on.....	33
3-1-2 Online self-diagnostics.....	34
3-1-3 Self-diagnostics in Maintenance mode.....	35
3-2 Temporary errors and Alarm detection algorithm	36
3-2-1 Temporary errors.....	36
3-2-2 Alarms.....	39
3-2-3 Flash memory status display	43
3-3 Troubleshooting.....	44
3-3-1 Scanner does not turn ON (No display on the operator panel)	45
3-3-2 Scanning does not start.....	45
3-3-3 Scanned image is distorted	45
3-3-4 Resolution or gradation of scanned image is unsatisfactory.....	46
3-3-5 Reserved.....	46
3-3-6 Reserved.....	46
3-3-7 Reserved.....	46
3-3-8 Too much jitter on scanned image with ADF scanning.....	47
3-3-9 Scanned image is misaligned with ADF scanning	47
3-3-10 Scan magnification factor abnormal with ADF scanning.....	48
3-3-11 Vertical streaks appear in scanned image.....	48
3-3-12 When calibrating white of scanned image.....	48
3-3-13 Frequent “U1: paper jam” error.....	49

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	5/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

3-3-14	Error detection of "No paper on the ADF paper chute (Chute Unit)"	49
3-3-15	Error detection of "U4: Cover open"	49
3-3-16	Frequent "U2: multi feed error"	50
3-3-17	"E2 or E3: Optical alarm"	50
3-3-18	"E4: Motor fuse blown"	51
3-3-19	"E6: Operator panel alarm"	51
3-3-20	"E7: EEPROM alarm"	52
3-3-21	"E8: SCSI fuse blown"	52
3-3-22	"E9: Image memory alarm"	52
3-3-23	"Ec: RAM alarm"	52
3-3-24	"Ed: SPC alarm / Image transfer error"	53
3-3-25	"F: ROM sum check alarm"	53
3-3-26	"Imprinter does not initially operate" (only when the Imprinter is installed)	53
3-3-27	"U6: No print cartridge" (only when the Imprinter is installed)	53
3-3-28	"EA: Imprinter alarm" (only when the Imprinter is installed)	54
3-3-29	"No printing / Printed letters are distorted" (only when the Imprinter is installed)	54
3-3-30	"Print form is dirty" (only when the Imprinter is installed)	54
3-3-31	"Printing is interrupted in process" (only when the Imprinter is installed)	55
3-3-32	"E5: Imprinter motor fuse blown"	55
3-3-33	"EF: Background changeover unit failure"	56
3-3-34	Driver error	56

Chapter 4 DISASSEMBLY / ASSEMBLY.....57

4-1	For the safety operation	57
4-2	Maintenance	58
4-2-1	Periodic maintenance	58
4-3	Cleaning	59
4-3-1	Cleaning Optical Unit (for front side)	59
4-3-2	Cleaning glass of Dust Cover ASSY (lower glass)	59
4-3-3	Cleaning Optical Unit (for back side)	60
4-3-4	Cleaning glass of Upper ASSY (upper glass)	60
4-4	Maintenance tool	61
4-5	Parts that should not be Disassembled	62
4-6	Removing / Installing the Chute Unit (ADF paper chute)	62
4-6-1	How to remove/install the Chute Unit (ADF paper chute)	62
4-6-2	How to remove/install the Stacker Unit	63
4-7	Removing / Installing the PCB Unit	64
4-8	Removing / Installing the Upper Unit, the Guide P ASSY (Sheet Guide) and the Base Unit	65
4-9	Removing / Installing the parts in the Upper Unit	69
4-9-1	How to remove/install the Panel PCA	69
4-9-2	How to remove/install the Lamp Inverter	70
4-9-3	Removing / Installing the ADF Motor	71
4-9-4	Removing / Installing the Optical Unit (for ADF backside)	73
4-9-5	Removing / Installing the Lamp (for ADF backside)	74
4-9-6	Removing/ Installing the US Sensor Upper	76
4-9-7	Removing / Installing the Sensor EM (for Empty detection)	77
4-9-8	Removing / Installing the Upper ASSY	78
4-10	Removing/Installing the parts of the Base Unit	79
4-10-1	How to remove/install the Guide A ASSY	79
4-10-2	How to remove/install the Lamp Inverter (for front side scan)	80
4-10-3	How to remove/install the US Sensor Lower	81
4-10-4	How to remove/install the Lamp (for ADF front)	82
4-10-5	How to remove/install the Dust Cover ASSY	84
4-10-6	How to remove/install the Optical Unit (for ADF front)	85
4-10-7	How to remove/install the BW Motor	86
4-10-8	How to remove/install the Clutch	87
4-11	Removing/Installing the Control PCA	89

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	6/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

Chapter 5 Adjustment/Settings	90
5-1 Maintenance mode.....	90
5-1-1 Activating the Maintenance mode.....	90
5-1-2 Maintenance mode #1: Paper feeding / Sensor / Background changeover test	92
5-1-3 Maintenance mode #2: Main scanning / Sub-scanning magnification adjustment	94
5-1-4 Maintenance mode #3: Offset adjustment	98
5-1-5 Maintenance mode #4: White level adjustment.....	101
5-1-6 Maintenance mode #5: Consumable counter display and reset	104
5-1-7 Maintenance mode #6: Miscellaneous information display	106
5-1-8 Maintenance mode #7: EEPROM data restore.....	108
5-2 Saving EEPROM data	110
5-3 Emulation mode.....	111
Chapter 6 Maintenance parts	114
6-1 Base Unit	115
6-2 Lamp Inverter	115
6-3 Lamp.....	116
6-4 US Sensor Lower.....	116
6-5 Guide A ASSY	117
6-6 Dust Cover ASSY.....	117
6-7 Optical Unit	118
6-8 BW Motor.....	118
6-9 Clutch	119
6-10 Guide P ASSY	119
6-11 Upper Unit	120
6-12 Upper ASSY	120
6-13 ADF Motor	121
6-14 US Sensor Upper	121
6-15 Sensor EM	122
6-16 Panel PCA	122
6-17 Control PCA	123
6-18 Stacker Unit	123
6-19 Chute Unit	124
6-20 AC Adapter.....	124
6-21 AC Cordset E / AC Cordset UK.....	125
6-22 AC Cordset U	125
6-23 AC Cordset C	125
Chapter 7 Imprinter (Optional)	126
7-1 Imprinter Specification	126
7-1-1 Printing function	126
7-1-2 Environmental specification.....	127
7-1-3 Appearance	128
7-1-4 Imprinter Operation Description	130
7-1-5 Circuit Block Diagram	131
7-2 Unpacking and Installation of Imprinter.....	132
7-2-1 Unpacking the Imprinter	132
7-2-2 Installing the Imprinter.....	133
7-2-3 Loading the Print cartridge.....	134
7-2-4 Operation Test.....	136
7-3 Basic Operation of the Imprinter	137
7-3-1 Setting The Print Position	137
7-3-2 How to Use the Paper Guides	138
7-3-3 Print Setting	139
7-3-4 Replacing the Print cartridge.....	142
7-3-5 Removing Jammed Documents.....	144

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	7/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

7-4	Daily Maintenance of the Imprinter	145
7-4-1	Cleaning the Print cartridge.....	145
7-4-2	Cleaning the Imprinter	145
7-4-3	Cleaning the Imprinter rollers	146
7-5	Replacing the Maintenance parts for the Imprinter	147
7-5-1	For Safety operation.....	147
7-5-2	Maintenance tool.....	147
7-5-3	Removing / Installing the Holder Lever.....	148
7-5-4	Removing / Installing the Pinch ASSY	148
7-5-5	Removing / Installing the Junction PCA	149
7-5-6	Removing / Installing the Holder ASSY, FPC Cable.....	150
7-5-7	Removing / Installing the Control PCA (for Imprinter).....	152
7-5-8	Removing / Installing the Sensor	153
7-5-9	Removing / Installing the Cover Open Sensor	154
7-5-10	Removing / Installing the LF Motor.....	155
7-5-11	Removing / Installing the PR Cable	156
7-5-12	Removing / Installing the Felt.....	157
7-5-13	Removing / Installing the Thumb Screw and Stopper.....	158
7-5-14	Removing / Installing the Guide Sheet.....	159
7-6	Maintenance Parts for Imprinter.....	160
7-6-1	Sensor.....	161
7-6-2	Control PCA.....	161
7-6-3	Junction PCA	162
7-6-4	PR Cable	162
7-6-5	Felt	163
7-6-6	LF Motor.....	163
7-6-7	Holder ASSY	164
7-6-8	Holder Lever	164
7-6-9	FPC Cable.....	165
7-6-10	Pinch ASSY	165
7-6-11	Stopper.....	166
7-6-12	Thumb Screw	166
7-6-13	Cover Open Sensor	167
7-6-14	Guide Sheet.....	167
7-6-15	Paper Guide.....	168
Appendix A Definition of Scanner and Camera Properties		169
A.1	Displaying Scanner and Camera Properties	169
A.2	General Tab.....	169
A.3	Events Tab.....	170
A.4	Diagnostic Tab	171
A.5	Device Information Tab	172
A.6	Device Setup Tab	173
A.7	About Tab.....	176
A.8	Color Management Tab Folder	176

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Oakda	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	8/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

Chapter 1 OVERVIEW

1-1 Specification

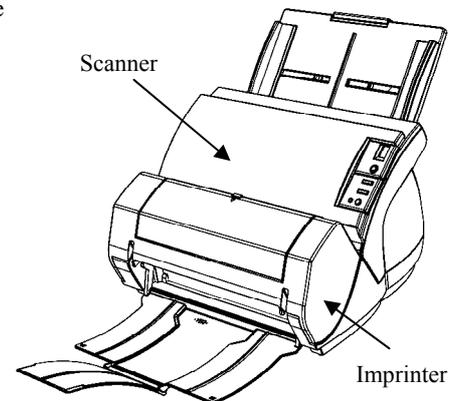
The fi-5120C (hereinafter called “the scanner”) offers high-speed color/gray/monochrome scanning with 600 dpi of optical resolution, up to A4/Legal size. It supports two interfaces, SCSI interface and USB interface, either of which can be used at a time.

The following points have been improved for the scanner compared to the previous type (fi-4120C2).

- (1) Improvement of color scanning speed
By changing the CCD, color scanning speed (A4 Portrait 200dpi) is improved from 16 ppm to 25 ppm.
- (2) Ultrasonic multi feed sensor
The previous model has the optical sensor which detects the length of documents and transmitted light to detect the multi feed. This scanner introduces ultrasonic sensor in order to perform very reliable multi feed detection.
- (3) Prevention of image chipping at overscan
Adding the electromagnetic Clutch to ADF enables to control the gap between documents. This results in extending overscan width, so that the image will not be chipped even when the document is skewed.
- (4) Card transportation with emboss available
This becomes available by widening the ADF transportation path.
- (5) Specified number of scanned pages ejected to the stacker
Adding the electromagnetic Clutch to ADF provides Pre-pick operation. When Pre-pick and the number of documents to be scanned are specified, this function becomes available.

An exclusive imprinter (fi-512PR, option) can be installed under the scanner as shown in the photo on the right.

See [Chapter 7](#) for the details of the imprinter.



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Oakda	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	9/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

1-1-1 Scanner Specifications

No.	Items	Specifications	
		This model	Previous models (fi-4120C2 for reference)
1	Operating method	Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)	
2	Optical resolution	600 dpi	
3	Output resolution	Binary: 50 – 600dpi Gray: 50 – 600 dpi Color: 50 – 600 dpi	
4	Bit depth	Color 24bit, Gray 8bit, Binary 1bit	
5	Scanning speed	Binary (200 dpi, A4 Portrait)	Simplex: 25 ppm Duplex: 50 ipm
		Color (200 dpi, A4 Portrait)	Simplex: 25 ppm Duplex: 50 ipm
6	Document	Size	Max. A4 or Legal, 210 x 356 mm / 8.27 x 14 in (Portrait) 216 x 864 mm / 8.50 x 34 in (Long page scanning) Min. A8, 52 x 74 mm (Portrait and Landscape)
		Thickness	52 to 127 g/m ² (14 to 34 lbs)
		Card transport	Available (85.6 x 53.98mm, 0.76mm thick)
7	Capacity of ADF	50 sheets (80g/m ² or 20lb, A4)	
8	Optical system	Lens and mirrors in use	
9	Light source	White cold cathode fluorescent lamp x2	
10	Multi feed detection	Ultrasonic sensor	Optical sensor
11	Interface	Ultra SCSI and USB 2.0/1.1 (one each)	
12	Attached driver	FJ TWAIN / ISIS	
13	Operator panel	Switch: Scan, Send To, Function Lamp: Power (LED), Scanner status (Function No. Display)	
14	Option	fi-512PR Imprinter (Post print)	fi-412PR, Imprinter (Post print)
15	Background	Selectable (black or white) for Front/Back sides	
16	Dropout color	R, G, B, Non-dropout *	
17	Auto cropping	Available	Available**

* The speed for color scanning is applied when non-dropout is selected.

** In case of the conventional models, a part of the image may be chipped for the document larger than A4.

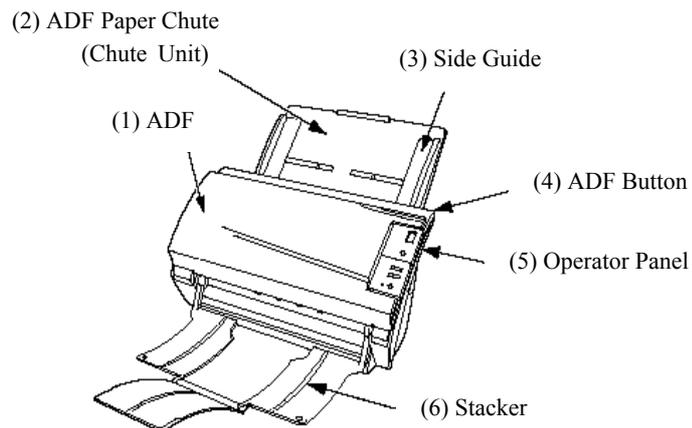
05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)			
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DRAW. No.	MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.		
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.					
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	10/176		
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai					

1-1-2 Environmental Specifications

No.	Items		Specifications	
			This model	Previous models (fi-4120C2 for reference)
1	Input power	Voltage	100 to 120 VAC \pm 10% 220 to 240 VAC \pm 10%	
		Frequency	50/60 \pm 3 Hz	
2	Power consumption		33W or less (Rated power)	28 W or less (Rated power)
3	Noise		50 dB or less (excluding operator's area)	
4	Outer dimensions		Without ADF paper Chute and Stacker Unit: 301 (W) x 168 (D) x 158 (H) mm 11.8 (W) x 6.6 (D) x 6.2 (H) in	
5	Installation space		400 (W) x 700 (D) x 380 (H) mm 15.8 (W) x 27.6 (D) x 15.0 (H) in	
6	Weight		3.8kg (8.39 lb)	3.5kg (7.7 lb)
7	Ambient condition	Temperature	5 to 35 °C / 41 to 95 °F (Operating) -20 to 60 °C / -4 to 140 °F (Not operating)	
		Humidity	20 to 80 % (Operating) 8 to 95 % (Not operating)	
8	Calorific value		28.38kcal/H or less	24.1kcal/H or less
9	Shipping weight		6.0kg / 13.2 lb	5.0kg / 11.0 lb

1-1-3 Appearance

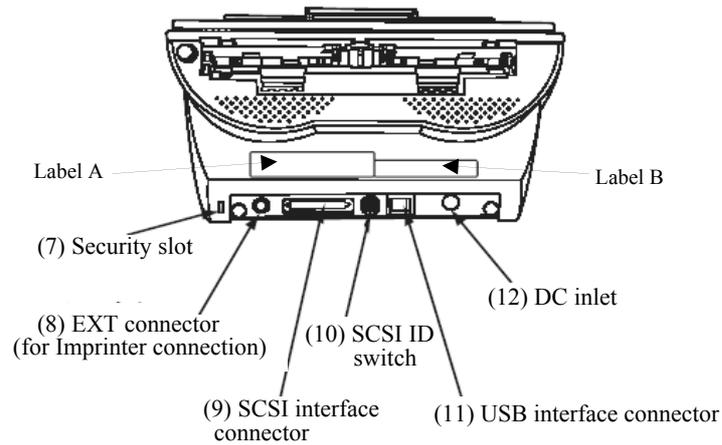
[Front]



No.	Parts name	Function
1	ADF (Automatic Document Feeder)	Automatically feeds documents into the scanner.
2	ADF Paper Chute (Chute Unit)	Used when scanning documents on the ADF
3	Side Guide	Adjust the side guides to match the width of the documents to prevent the document from skewing.
4	ADF Button	Press this button to open the ADF cover, for example, to remove jammed documents in the ADF.
5	Operator Panel	Used for operating the scanner. The scanner status is indicated on the Function No. Display Panel.
6	Stacker	Documents are stacked here after they are scanned.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	11/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

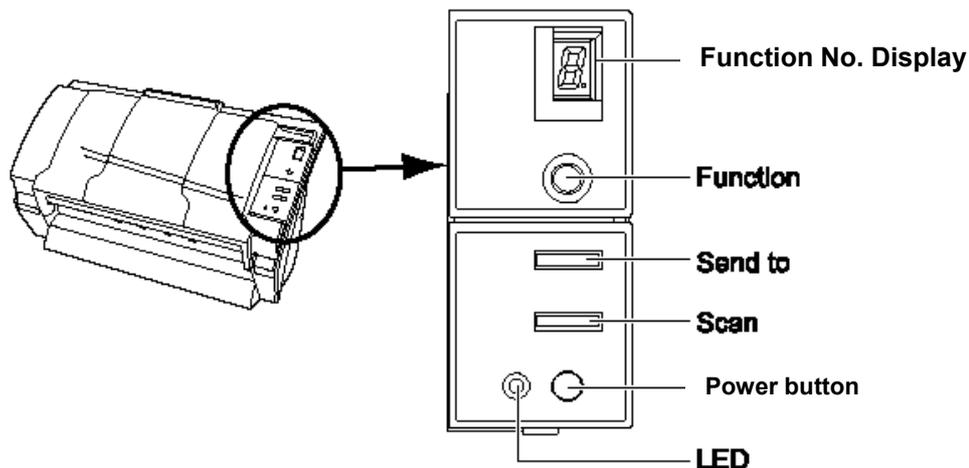
[Back]



No.	Parts name	Function
7	Security Slot	Attaches the antitheft chain
8	EXT Connector	Connects the cable from the Imprinter
9	SCSI Interface Connector	Connects the SCSI interface cable from the host PC or Computer here.
10	SCSI ID Switch	Sets the SCSI-ID. (Set to "5" before the scanner is shipped from the factory.)
11	USB Interface Connector	Connects the USB interface cable from the host PC or Computer here.
12	DC Inlet	Connects the AC Adapter here.
13	Label A	Manufacturing label (example) <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px;"> <p>MODEL fi-****C ** V ~ ~ ** A ** kg</p> <p>PART NO. *****-**** 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</p> <p>SER. NO. ***** 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</p> <p>DATE 200*-** Barcode printing area</p> <p>PFU Limited a Fujitsu company MADE IN *****</p> </div>
14	Label B	Authorizing label (example) <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px;"> <p>CE Tested To Comply With FCC Standards</p> <p>UL 10667 FOR HOME OR OFFICE USE</p> <p> This Class II digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003. Cet appareil numérique de la classe II est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.</p> </div>

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	12/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

[Operator Panel]

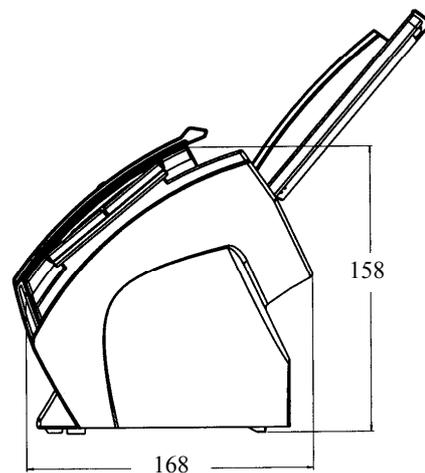
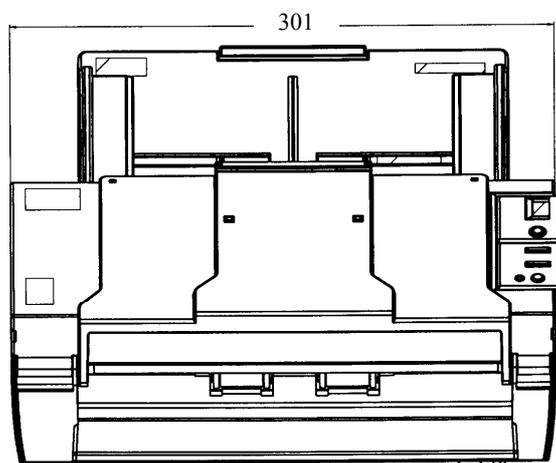
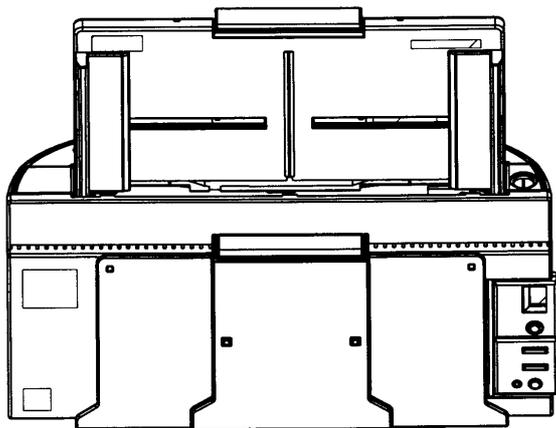


Name		Function
Function No. Display		Indicates the function Number and Error status.
Buttons	Function	Changes the Function activated by the [Send to] button.
	Send to	Launches the linked application software (*).
	Scan	
	Power button	Turns the scanner ON and OFF.
LED	-	Lights when the scanner is turned ON.

(*): About the setting on the launcher, refer to FUJITSU TWAIN32 scanner driver help in the set-up CD-ROM.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6	
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	13/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

[Outer dimensions]
Scanner only



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	14/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

1-1-4 Document Specifications

- Document Type

The following paper types are recommended for document use:

- Woodfree paper
- Wood containing paper

When using documents of paper type other than the above, check whether or not the document can be scanned by test-scanning a few sheets before executing the actual document.

- Document Thickness

Paper thickness is expressed by “paper weight”. The following shows the paper weights that can be used on this scanner:

52 g/m² to 127 g/m²
 Only paper weight of 127 g/m² is acceptable for A8-size documents.

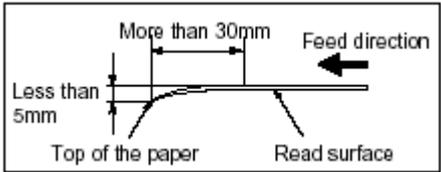
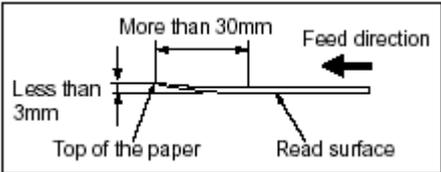
- Precautions

The following documents may not be scanned successfully.

- Documents of non-uniform thickness (e.g. envelopes)
- Wrinkled or curled documents (See right figure)
- Folded or torn documents
- Tracing paper
- Coated paper
- Carbon paper
- Carbonless paper
- Photosensitive paper
- Perforated or punched documents
- Documents that are not square or rectangular
- Very thin documents

Do not use the following documents:

- Paper-clipped or stapled documents
- Documents on which the ink is still wet
- Documents smaller than A8 (Portrait) in size
- Documents wider than A3 or Letter size (216mm)
- Documents other than paper such as fabric, metal foil or transparencies



Note: - When scanning semi-transparent documents, slide the [Brightness] bar to light to avoid bleed through.
 - To prevent the rollers from becoming dirty, avoid scanning documents containing large areas written or filled in pencil. If scanning of such document is unavoidable, clean the rollers more frequently.

Note: - Carbonless paper contains chemical substances that may damage the Pad ASSY or rollers (e.g. Pick roller) when documents are fed. Pay attention to the following:
Cleaning: If pick errors occur frequently, clean the Pad ASSY and Pick rollers, by referring Section 1-6-1.
Replacement parts: The service life of the Pad ASSY and the Pick rollers is sometimes shortened when scanning medium-grade paper documents.
 - When the manuscript of Wood containing paper is read, the life of a Pad ASSY and a Pick roller may become short compared with the case where the manuscript of Woodfree paper is read.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	15/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

1-1-5 Multi feed Detection Condition

One of the following method of multi feed detection is selected by the driver.

- Check overlapping
- Check length
- Check overlapping and length

The following condition is required for each selection:

1) Check overlapping

- Paper weight: 52g/m² - 127g/m²
- Punched holes are not allowed within 35 mm (1.4 in) of the vertical centerline of the document.
- Other paper shall not be glued within 35 mm (1.4 in) of the vertical centerline of the document.

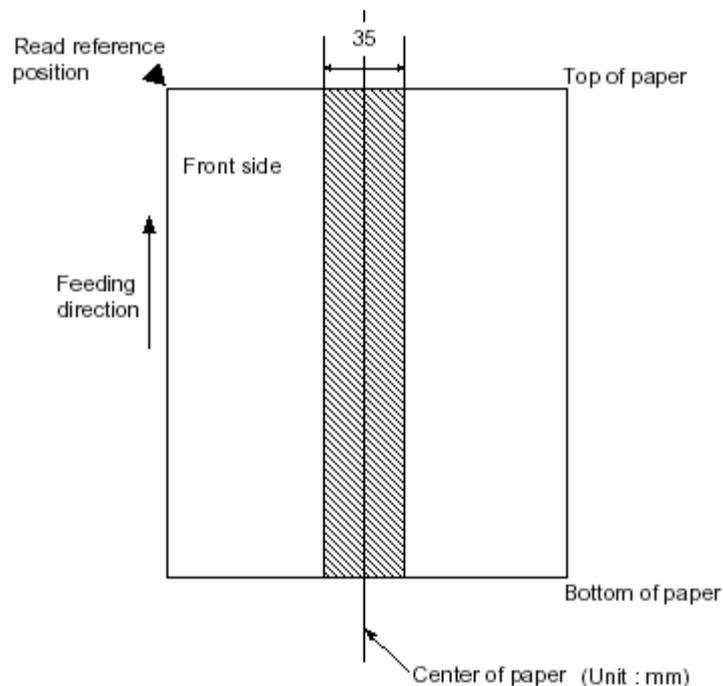
2) Check length

- Document length deviation: 1 % or less
- Punched holes are not allowed within 35 mm (1.4 in) of the vertical centerline of the document.

3) Check overlapping and length

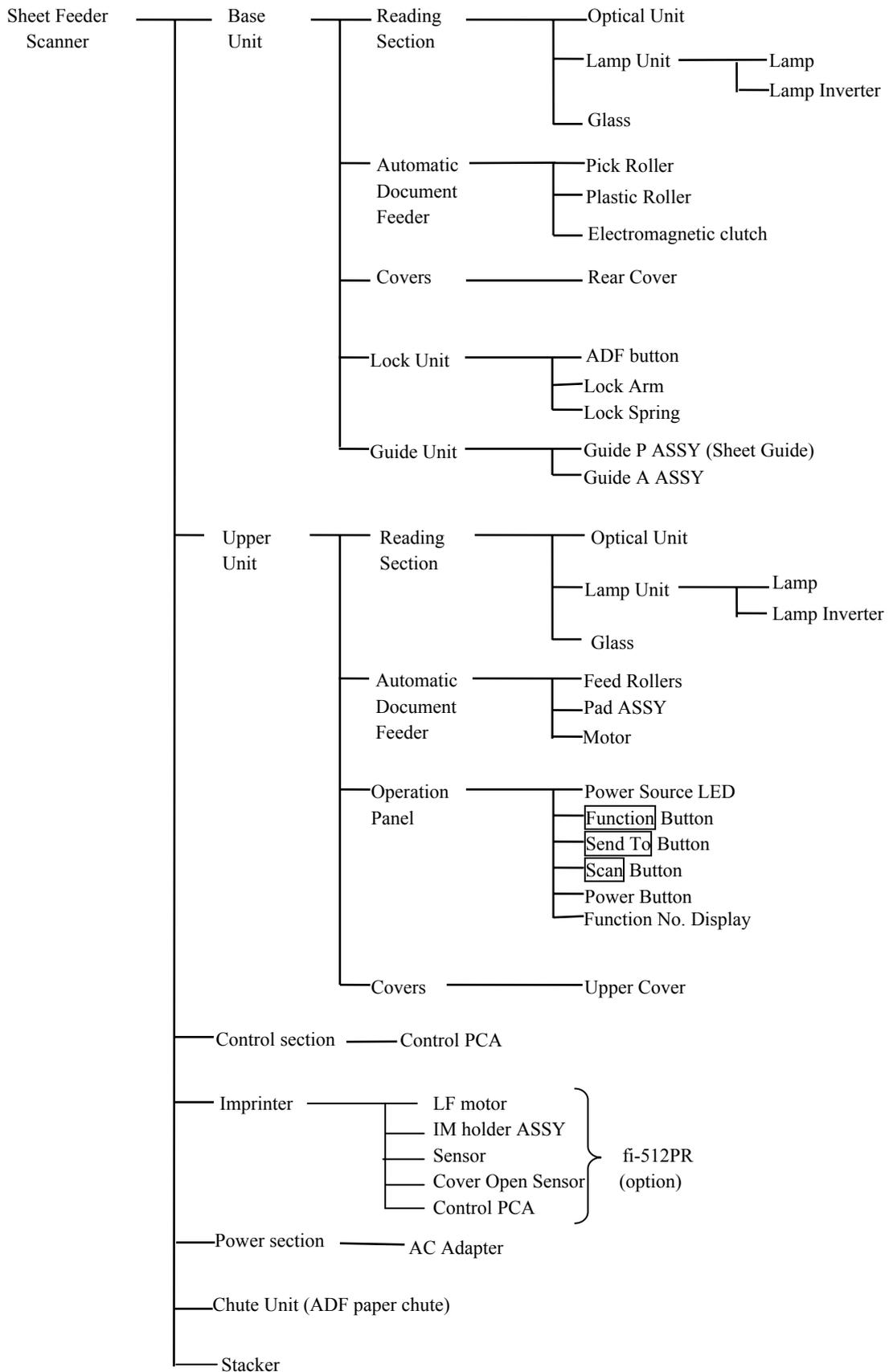
- Paper weight: 52g/m² - 127g/m²
- Document length deviation: 1 % or less
- Punched holes are not allowed within 35 mm (1.4 in) of the vertical centerline of the document.
- Other paper shall not be glued within 35 mm (1.4 in) of the vertical centerline of the document.

When the overlapping check is specified, the papers which contact closely each other, such as glued paper or electro-statically charged paper, can result in the miss-detection of multi feed.



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	16/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

1-2 System Configuration



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	17/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

1-3 Unpacking the scanner

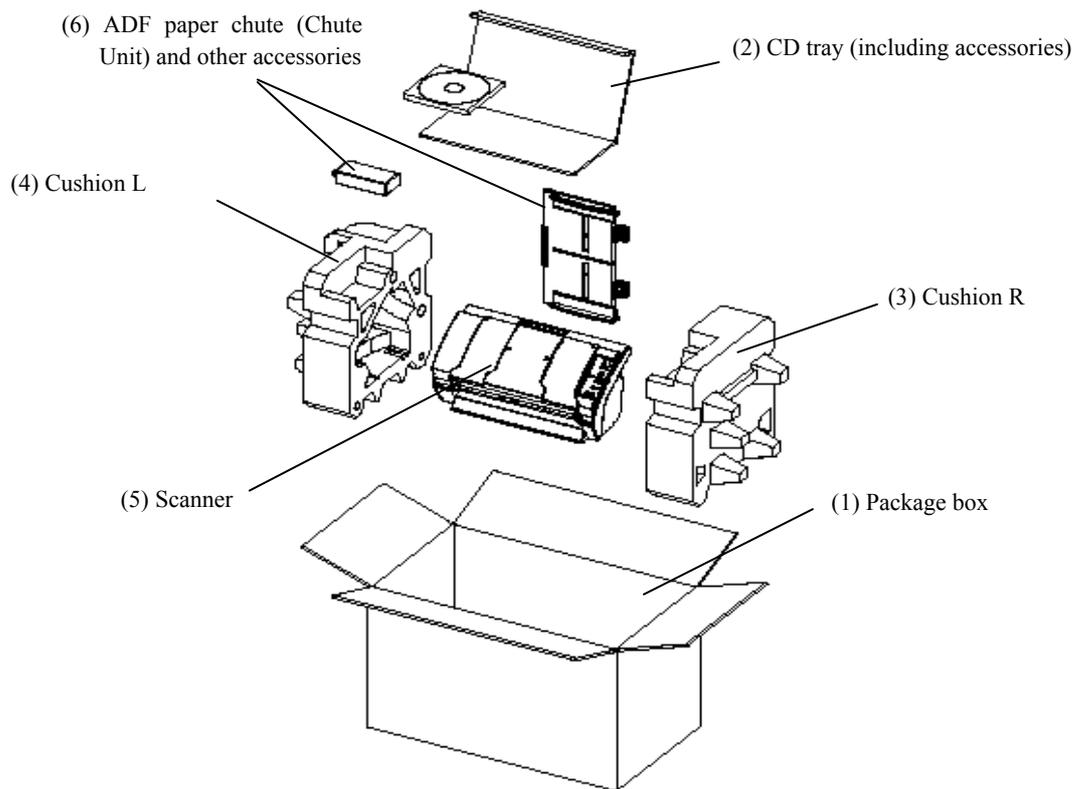
Follow the procedure below to unpack the scanner package. Make sure that all the accessories are included in the package.

1. Remove the tape to open the package box.
2. Take out the CD tray and other accessories.
3. Take out the scanner and cushions. And remove the cushioning materials.
4. Open the polyethylene bag to take out the scanner.
5. Take out all the accessories and remove the tape protecting the scanner.

The following table lists the packaging configuration.

No.	Items	Quantity
1	Package box	1
2	CD tray (including accessories)	1
3	Cushion R	1
4	Cushion L	1
5	Scanner in Polyethylene bag	1
6	ADF paper chute (Chute Unit) and other accessories	1

Table 1.3 Packaging configuration



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	18/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

1-4 Installing the scanner

1-4-1 For safety installation

Before installing the scanner, read the following cautions carefully to avoid scanner trouble.

Refer to Section 1-1-2 “Environmental Specifications” for information of power source and scanner dimensions.

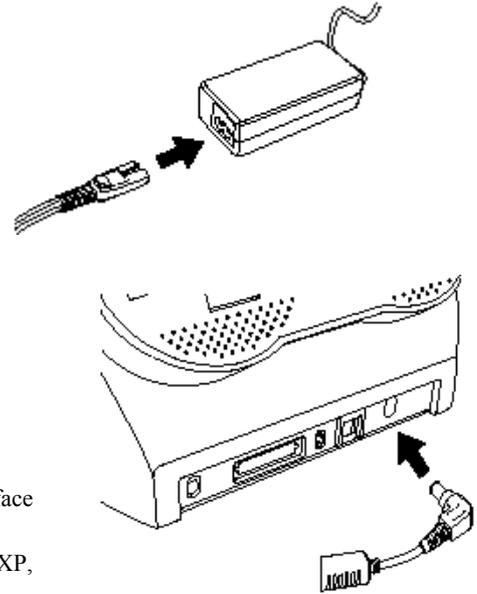
- Install the scanner away from strong magnetic fields and other sources of noise.
- Do not install the scanner near heating apparatus or in the direct sunlight.
- Install the scanner in a location which is level and subject to minimal vibration.
- Do not install the scanner in locations subject to humidity and dust.
- Do not block the ventilation ports.
- Protect the scanner from static electricity.
- Use proper AC voltage.
- Make sure the rubber pads on the bottom of the scanner grounds evenly.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	19/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

1-4-2 Installation

If you wish to install the imprinter (optional), refer to [Section 7-2-2](#) before performing the following procedures.

- (1) Install the ADF paper chute (Chute Unit) by referring to [Section 4-6-1](#).
- (2) Connect the AC cable to the AC Adapter (picture on the right).
- (3) Connect the AC Adapter connector to the scanner's DC inlet (picture on the right below).
- (4) Plug the AC cable into the outlet.



Note: The Function No. Display and the LED may flash for an instant when plugging the AC cable into the outlet.

- (5) Connect the USB cable or the SCSI cable to the scanner. Connect the other end of the cable to the PC.

Note 1: Connect only one of the USB or SCSI interface cables.

- When running Windows 95 or Windows NT 4.0, connect the SCSI interface cable. These operating systems do not support USB interface.
- When running Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows 2000, or Windows XP, connect either the USB interface cable or the SCSI interface cable.

Note 2: Be sure to use the USB cable which comes as an accessory with this scanner. Scanning operation with commercially available cables is not guaranteed.

Note 3: When connecting to a USB hub, use the first stage USB hub that is closest to the computer. If you use the second or later hub stages, the scanner may not operate correctly.

Note 4: If you connect the scanner with USB 2.0, it is required that the USB port and Hub are compliant with USB 2.0. The scanning speed may slow down if it is connected with USB 1.1.

Note 5: When using the scanner with a SCSI interface, a commercially available SCSI interface cable and SCSI card must be purchased in addition.

- SCSI interface cable:

Use a connector which complies with Ultra SCSI. A 50 Pin Contact Shielded High-Density SCSI Device Connector is required.

- SCSI card:

Find the recommended SCSI card information in the Fujitsu web site (FAQ).

<http://imagescanner.fujitsu.com/>

Note 6: When connecting the SCSI interface cable, turn the scanner off. Be sure to first connect the SCSI interface cable, and, then turn on the scanner and the PC.

Note 7: In a SCSI daisy chain formation, connect the scanner so that it is the terminated device.

- (6) The factory default setting for SCSI ID is "5". If the SCSI ID of another SCSI device is set to the same ID, change either the scanner's SCSI ID or SCSI ID of the other SCSI device. Set the SCSI ID using the SCSI ID switch on the back of the scanner.



- (7) Press the Power button to turn ON the scanner.

- (8) Turn ON your PC and log on to Windows.

- (9) Install the software.

The following scanner drivers and application software are included with the scanner.

Scanner drivers:

- FUJITSU TWAIN 32 Scanner driver
- FUJITSU ISIS Scanner driver

Application software:

- ScandAll 21 (for FUJITSU TWAIN 32)
- QuickScan Pro™ (for FUJITSU ISIS)

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	20/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

1-5 Basic Operation

1-5-1 Turn ON/OFF the Scanner

(1) Turning ON the scanner

Press the power button on the Operator panel.

The scanner is turned ON, and the green LED on the Operator panel lights.

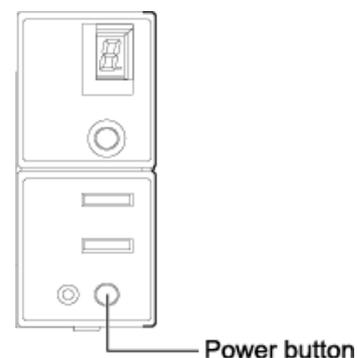
Also, while the scanner is being initialized, the indication of the Function No. Display changes as follows.

“8” → “P” → “0” → “1”

The indication “1” means that the Operator panel is in the ready status.

(2) Turning OFF the scanner

Hold the power button down for at least two seconds.

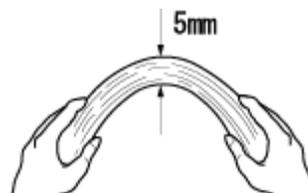


05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	21/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

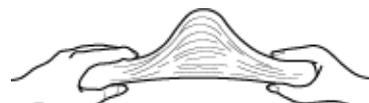
1-5-2 Loading Documents on the ADF for Scanning

1. Align the edges of the documents.
 - 1) Confirm that all the documents have the same width.
 - 2) Check the number of sheets in the document stack.
 The standard number of sheets that can be loaded on the scanner is as follows:
 - A4-size paper or smaller that makes a document stack of 5mm or less
 - Maximum 50 sheets at A4, 20 lb., or 80 g/m²

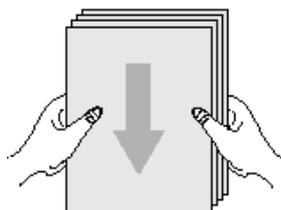
2. Fan the documents as follows:
 - 1) Lightly grip both ends of the document with both hands, and bend the document as follows.



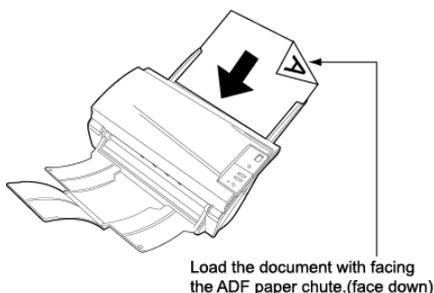
- 2) Firmly holding the document with both ends, bend back the document as follows so that the bent section rises up in the middle of the document as follows.
 - 3) Repeat steps 1) to 2) a few times.
 - 4) Rotate the document 90 degrees, and fan again.



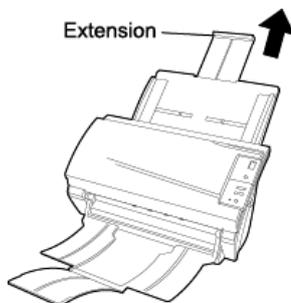
3. Align the top of the documents.



4. Load the document on the ADF paper chute (Chute Unit).
 Set the documents face-down in the ADF paper chute (Chute Unit) (so that the side to be scanned faces towards the ADF paper chute (Chute Unit)).

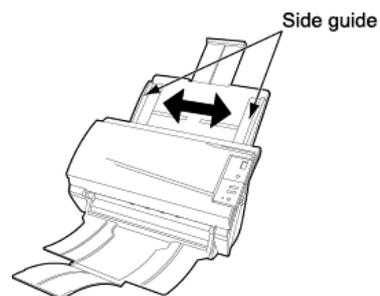


Before loading A4-size documents, pull out the ADF paper chute (Chute Unit) extension.



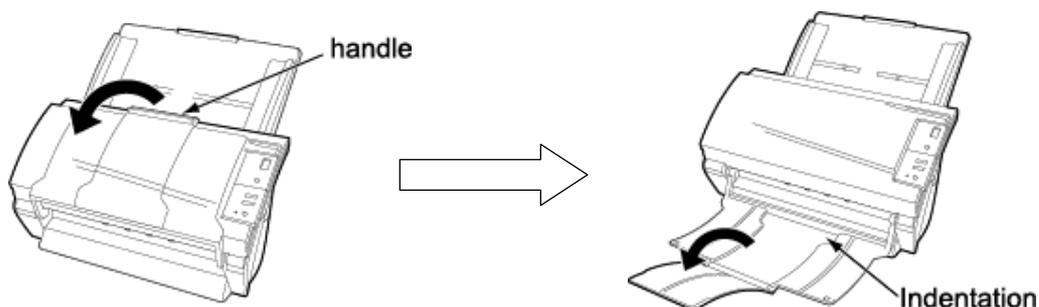
05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	22/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

- Adjust the side guides to the width of the documents.
 Move the side guides so that they touch both sides of the documents.
 If there is any space between the side guides and the edges of documents, the scanned image may be skewed.



The stacker prevents document sheets from dropping after they are scanned.
 Use the stacker as follows.

- Lift up the stacker towards you by inserting your fingertips into the handle on the scanner.
- Lift the paper stop and swing forward by inserting your fingertips into the indentation on the scanner as shown in below figure.



- Start up the scanner application, and scan the document.

The following is an example of how to scan documents using the ScandAll application.

- Start up ScandAll 21.
 Select [Start] – [Program] – [Scanner Utility for Microsoft Windows] – [ScandAll 21].
 → This starts up ScandAll 21.
- Select [Select Source] from the [Scan] menu.
- Select “FUJITSU fi-5120Cdj (for Windows 95 and Windows NT 4.0, select “FUJITSU TWAIN 32”) and click the [Select] menu.
- Click the [Scan to View] button on the tool bar.
 → The [TWAIN Driver] dialog box (screen for setting the scan conditions) appears.
- Set the scan resolution, paper size and other scan conditions, and click the [Scan] button.

The document is scanned, and an image of the scanned document appears on the ScandAll 21 screen. For details on ScandAll 21 functions and operations, refer to ScandAll 21 Help.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6	
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION		PFU LIMITED	PAGE	23/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR.	T.Anzai			

1-6 Daily Care

⚠ CAUTION

The glass surface of the ADF glass becomes hot during the operation of the scanner. Before you start to clean inner parts of the scanner, turn off its power and unplug the AC Adapter from the outlet. Wait for at least 15 minutes. Do not turn off the scanner when you clean the Feed rollers.

Cycle for cleaning is every 1,000 sheets. The scanner must be cleaned more frequently when the following documents are used.

- Documents of coated paper
- Documents with printed text or graphics covering almost the entire surface
- Chemically treated documents such as carbonless paper
- Documents containing a large amount of calcium carbonate
- Documents with Handwritten documents

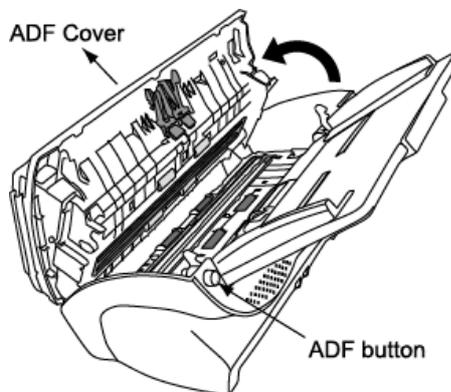
1-6-1 Cleaning the ADF

How to clean:

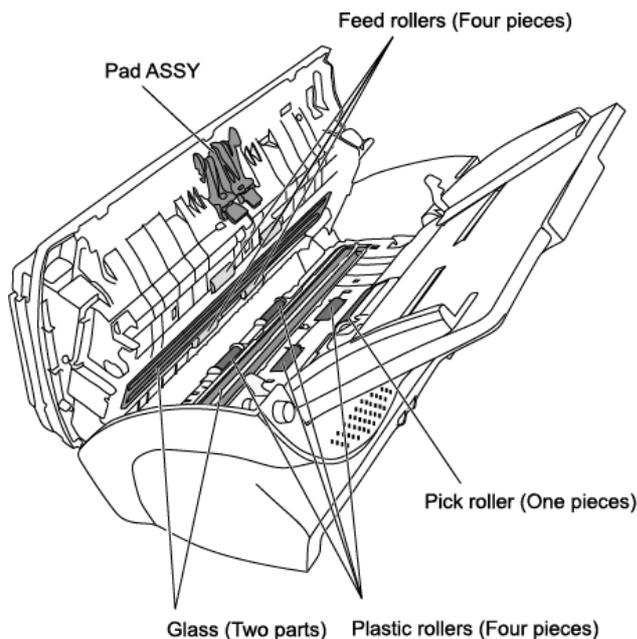
- (1) Open the ADF by pushing on the ADF button and turning the ADF cover to the front.

⚠ CAUTION

Be careful, the ADF cover may close and pinch your finger.



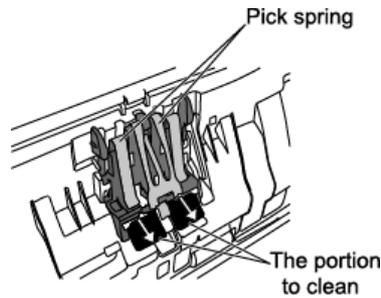
- (2) Clean the following locations with a soft, dry cloth or a cloth moistened with cleaning fluid (ethyl alcohol or isopropyl alcohol).



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	24/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

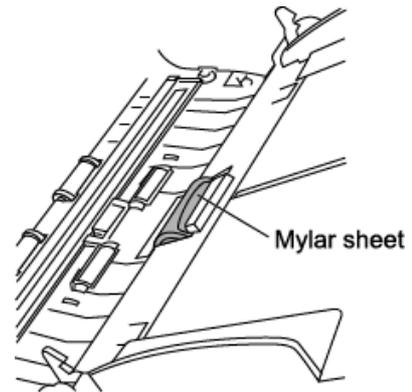
- Pad ASSY

Clean the Pad ASSY (rubber surface) downwards (direction of arrow). Take care not to catch the pick springs to avoid bending.



- Pick roller

Lightly clean the Pick rollers taking care not to scratch the roller surfaces and the Mylar sheet. Take particular care in cleaning this roller as black debris on it adversely affects the pickup performance.



- Feed rollers

- 1) Open the ADF by pushing on the ADF button.

If you open the ADF cover when the indication of the Function No. Display is "P" or "0", the Feed rollers do not rotate even you perform the operation of step 2) below. So open the ADF cover when the indication is not "P" or "0".

- 2) Simultaneously hold down the **Send to** and **Scan** buttons on the operator panel. The Feed rollers start to rotate slowly.

CAUTION

All the feed rollers turn at the same time. When cleaning the Feed rollers positioned in the lower part of the ADF, be careful not to touch the other Feed rollers.

- 3) Hold a soft, dry cloth moistened with cleaning fluid (ethyl alcohol or isopropyl alcohol) against the surface of the rotating Feed rollers so that it lightly cleans the surface of the rollers. Take particular care when cleaning these rollers as black debris on these rollers affects document pick performance.

As a guideline, seven presses of the **Send to** and **Scan** buttons make the Feed rollers to rotate one full turn.

- Plastic roller

Clean lightly the surface of these rollers to avoid damaging it. Take particular care when cleaning these rollers as black debris on it affects document pick performance. Be careful not to damage the sponges beside the rollers.

- Glass

Clean lightly.

If the glass is dirty, vertical black streaks may appear in the scanned images.

- (3) Press down on the center of the ADF to return it to its original position until the ADF button locks.

Note: When the ADF has returned to its original position, make sure that it is completely closed. Paper jams or feeding errors may occur if the ADF is not closed completely.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	25/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

1-7 Replacing the consumables

1-7-1 Consumables

The scanner has the following consumables which users need to replace at the following intervals when the screen on the right appears. To check the number of scanned documents, go to Maintenance mode (Section 5-1-6) or the Properties of [Scanners and Cameras] on the Control panel (Appendix A).

Refer to [Section 7-1-1](#) for the specifications of Print cartridge.

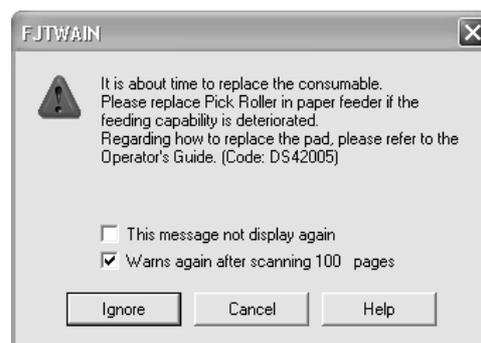


Table 1-7-1

No.	Part name	Specifications	Standard replacement cycle	How to check the number of scanned documents	How to replace
1	Pad ASSY	PA03289-0111	50,000 sheets or one year	See Section 5-1-6 .	See Section 1-7-2 .
2	Pick roller	PA03289-0001	100,000 sheets or one year		See Section 1-7-3 .

The replacement cycles above are rough guidelines for the case of using A4/Letter woodfree or wood containing paper 64g/m² (17lb). This cycle varies according to the type of the used paper and how frequently the scanner is used and cleaned.

The following shows how to replace the consumables on the scanner. Refer to [Section 7-3-3](#) for how to replace the consumable for the Imprinter (Print cartridge).

CAUTION

The glass surface of the ADF glass becomes hot during the operation of the scanner. Before you start to clean inner parts of the scanner, turn off its power and unplug the AC Adapter from the outlet. Wait for at least 15 minutes. Do not turn off the scanner when you clean the Feed rollers.

1-7-2 Pad ASSY replacement

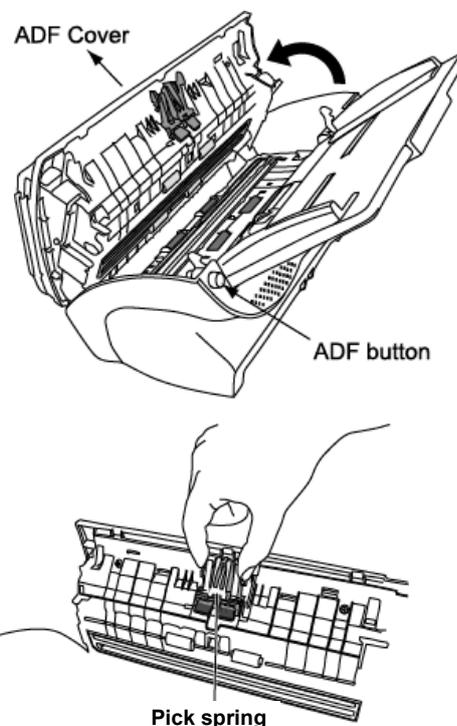
Refer to [Section 1-7-1](#) for the specification of the Pad ASSY.

- Remove any documents on the ADF paper chute (Chute Unit).
- Open the ADF by pushing the ADF button.

CAUTION

Be careful, the ADF cover may close and pinch your finger.

- Press the knobs on both end of the Pad ASSY, and pull the Pad ASSY upwards and towards you. When doing this, take care not to catch the pick spring.
- Hold both ends of the new Pad ASSY and attach it to its installation location. When doing this, take care not to catch the pick spring.
- Press down on the center of the ADF to return it into its original position and lock the ADF button.
- Reset the pad counter. (Refer to [Section 1-7-4](#))



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	26/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

1-7-3 Pick roller replacement

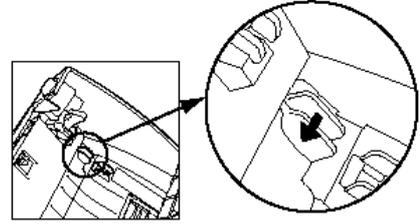
Refer to [Section 1-7-1](#) for the specification of the Pick roller.

- (1) Remove any documents on the ADF paper chute (Chute Unit) and remove the ADF paper chute (Chute Unit).
- (2) Open the Imprinter area if the optional Imprinter is installed. Open the ADF by pushing the ADF button.

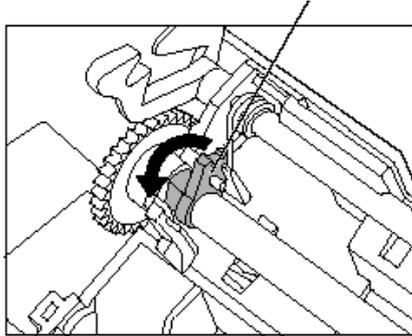
CAUTION

Be careful, the ADF cover may close and pinch your finger.

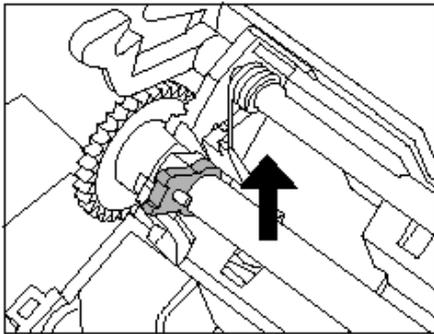
- (3) Grip the knobs on the sheet guide (Guide P ASSY) with your fingers, and lift it up to remove.
- (4) Rotate the Pick roller bushing in the direction of the arrow.



Pick roller bushing



- (5) Remove the Pick roller while lifting up in the direction of the arrow.

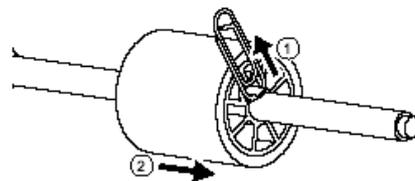
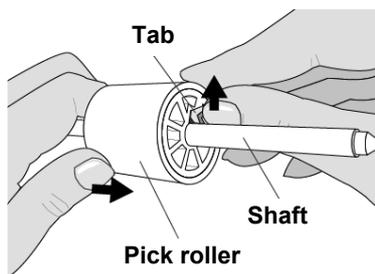


CAUTION

The Pick roller bushing is hard. Do not turn this bearing with your fingernails.

Use a paper clip for turning the roller bushing if you cannot rotate it with your finger.

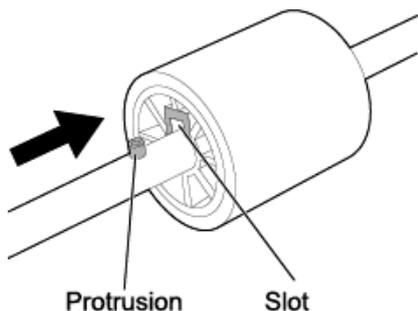
- (6) Remove the Pick roller from its shaft.



If you push up the pick roller tab using your fingernail, it may hurt or get chipped your fingernail. If you worry about that, you push up the pick roller tab using a paper grip.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	27/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

- (7) Attach the new Pick roller.
Insert the new Pick roller aligning the protrusion on the shaft with the slot for the screw in the Pick roller.



Note: Make sure that the Pick roller is completely attached. An incompletely attached Pick roller might cause document jams or other feed errors. When attaching the Pick roller, make sure that the roller clicks in to place.

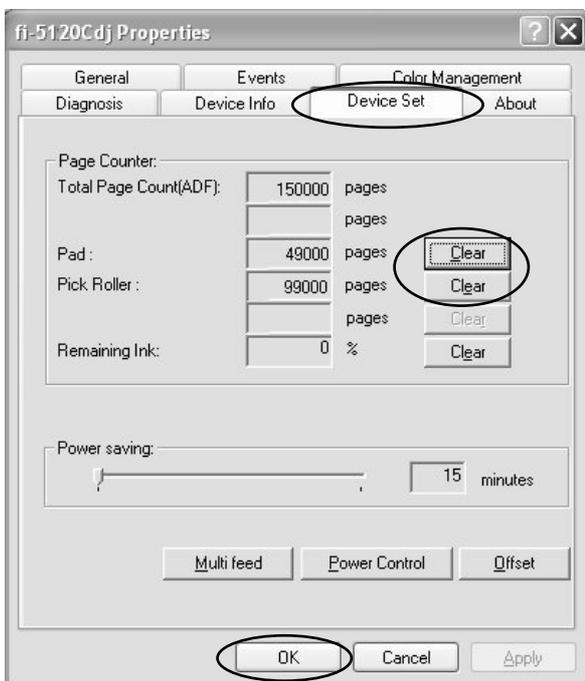
- (8) Attach the Pick roller to the scanner in reverse procedure for removing.
- (9) Press down the center of the ADF to return it to its original position and lock the ADF button and attach the ADF paper chute (Chute Unit).
- (10) Reset the Pick counter. (Refer to Section 1-7-4.)

1-7-4 Resetting Consumable Counters

For Windows 98 / Windows Me / Windows 2000 / Windows XP (example)

Note: For Windows 95 / Windows NT 4.0, perform it on the FUJITSU Scanner Control Center.

- 1) When turning ON the power, check that the scanner is connected to your PC.
 - 2) Open the [Scanners and Cameras] from the control panel of your PC.
 - 3) Open the [Properties] of [fi-5120Cdj] from the [Scanners and Cameras].
 - 4) The [fi-5120Cdj Properties] dialog box appears.
 - 5) Click the “Device Set” tab.
- The following screen is displayed.



- 6) After clicking the [Clear] button beside “Pad” or “Pick Roller” in “Page Counter”, click the [OK] button.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	28/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

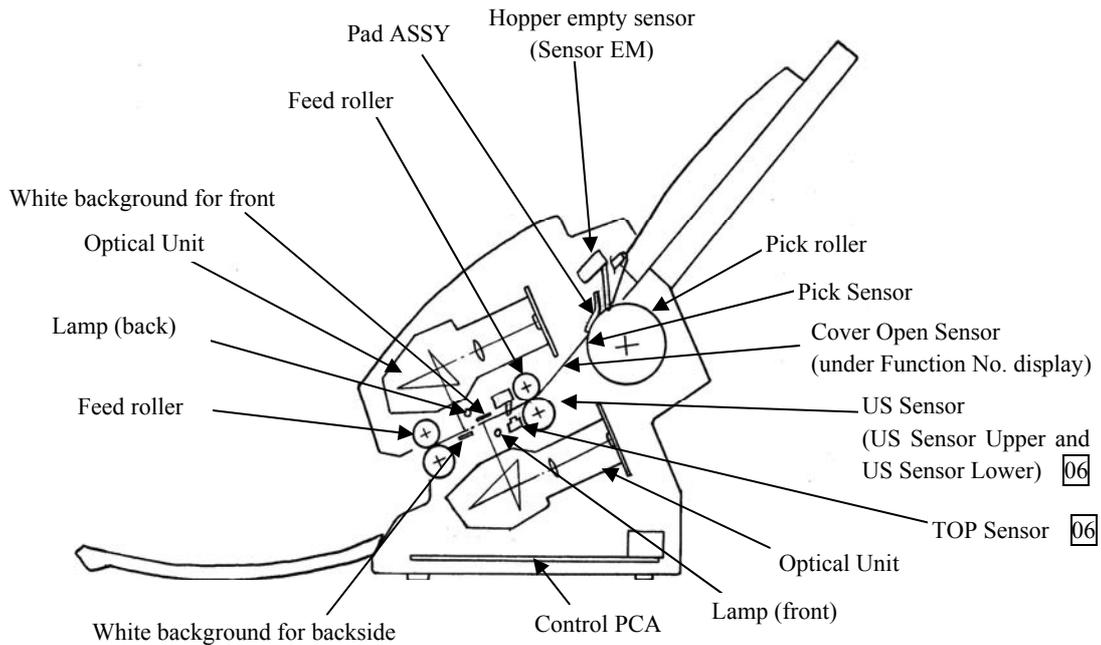
Chapter 2 Description of scanner operation

2-1 ADF unit

(1) Paper separation

When scanning with the ADF, documents loaded on the ADF paper chute (Chute Unit) are separated respectively by the pick roller and Pad ASSY and fed into the ADF. Separated documents are transported by the feed rollers at the speed that corresponds to specified reading resolution until they are ejected to the stacker.

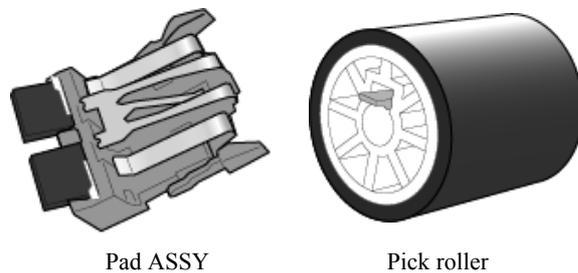
Paper feeding unit includes Hopper empty sensor (Sensor EM), TOP sensor, Multi feed sensor (US Sensor) and Cover Open Sensor.



(2) Consumables

The pick roller and Pad ASSY are consumables and need to be replaced by a user. (Refer to [Section 1-7](#) for detail)

The scanner supports two consumable counters, pad counter and pick counter, which indicate the number of sheets that have been scanned so far. Users can check the counters from the driver screen or scanner built-in Maintenance mode, and reset the counter after replacing the consumables. (See [Section 5-1-6](#) for details.)



Pad ASSY

Pick roller

(3) Drive unit

The pick roller and feed rollers are turned by the ADF Motor. The Pick roller rotation can be stopped by the electromagnetic Clutch during the feed rollers rotation. This can widen the gap between documents and extend the amount of overscan while overscanning.

The motor drive circuit and motor fuse are located in the Control PCA. If abnormal electric current runs through the motor drive circuit, the current is cut off by the motor fuse in the Control PCA.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	29/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

2-2 Reading station

(1) Optical system

Documents are set in the ADF paper chute (Chute Unit) facing front side down. The front side of a document is read by the Optical Unit inside the Base Unit, and the backside of a document is read by the Optical Unit inside the Upper Unit. These two Optical Units have the same parts number.

An image on a document is projected to a color CCD through lens and mirror system and converted to signals with 10 bit per pixel at 600 dpi resolution.

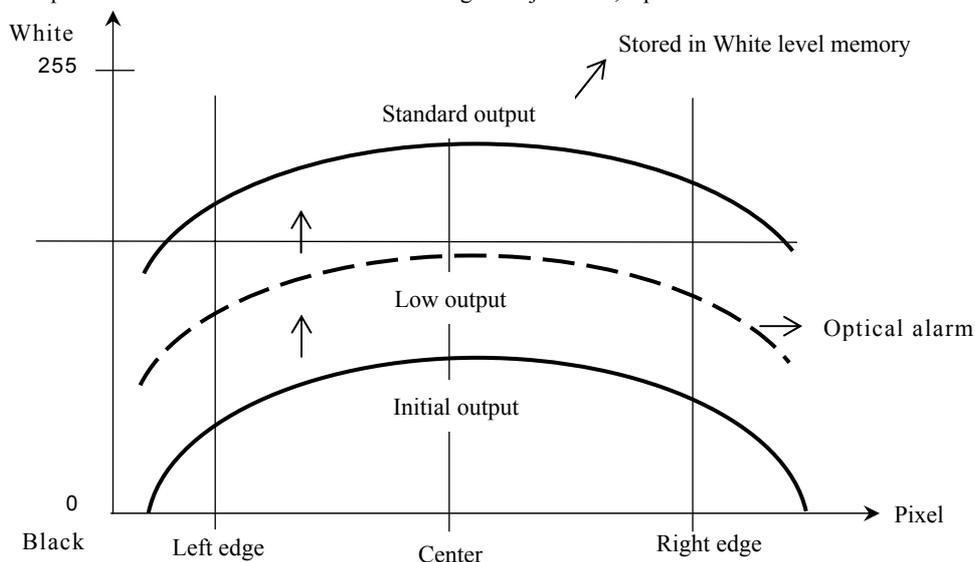
(2) Light source

The scanner uses two Lamps (Incandescent fluorescent lamp) which lights the scanning area of front and back side where the Optical Unit reads in order to get sufficient CCD output. The Lamp is turned ON or OFF by Lamp Inverter that is controlled by the Control PCA.

The life of Lamp is about 10000 hours, which means Lamp lasts during the life of device. So the Lamp is not a consumable.

(3) Scan controller

Before scanning a document, the scanner reads white background of the reading position and adjusts the gain of CCD amplifier. If the CCD output does not reach a certain level after the gain adjustment, Optical alarm is issued.



When the gain adjustment finishes successfully, the scanner feeds the document to the reading position at the speed that corresponds to specified reading resolution. Then the leading edge of the document is detected by the TOP sensor in front of the reading position. After the document is fed from TOP sensor by some defined length for front and back side scanning (the length which determines sub-scanning offset), the scanner starts reading image. The scanner terminates scan operation when the length specified from the host is scanned (Fixed size scanning) or when the TOP sensor detects the trailing edge of a document (Page end detection scanning).

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	30/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

2-3 Controller

(1) Control PCA

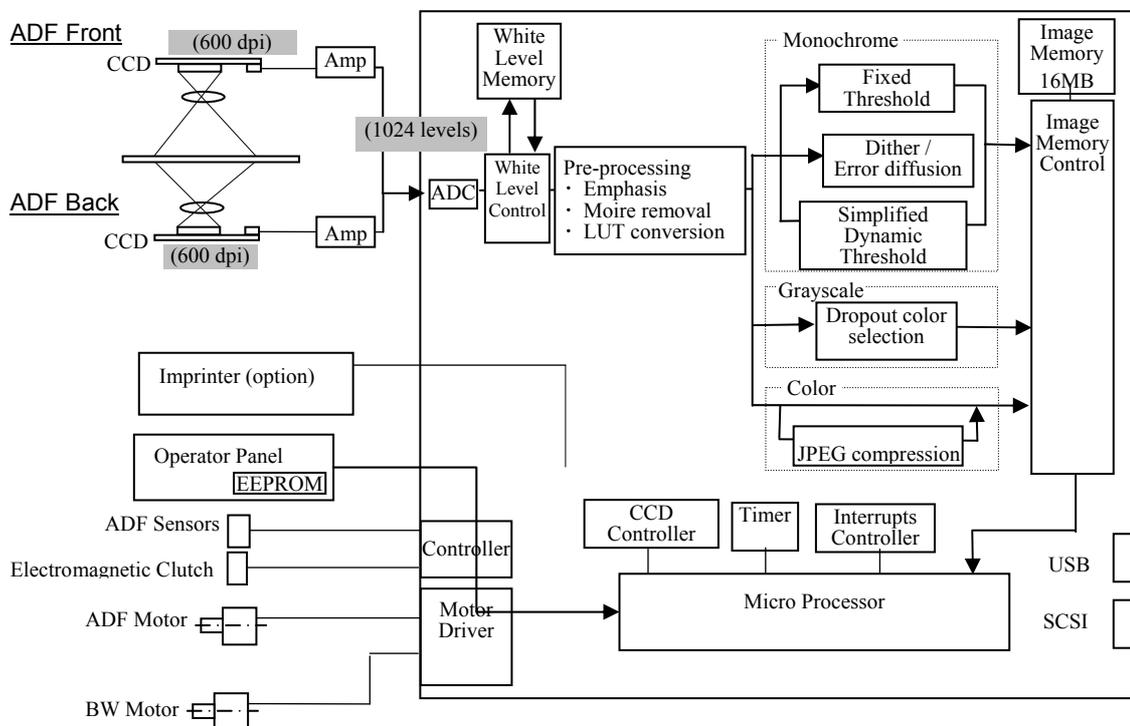
Control PCA controls the units shown in the figure below. It includes the following connectors and a switch.

- SCSI connector
- USB connector
- DC voltage input connector
- SCSI ID setting rotary switch

If both SCSI and USB cables are connected,

- SCSI is selected when selection phase is recognized first.
- USB is selected when H level VBUS signal is detected first.

The firmware can be updated through a SCSI/USB interface using firmware update tool.



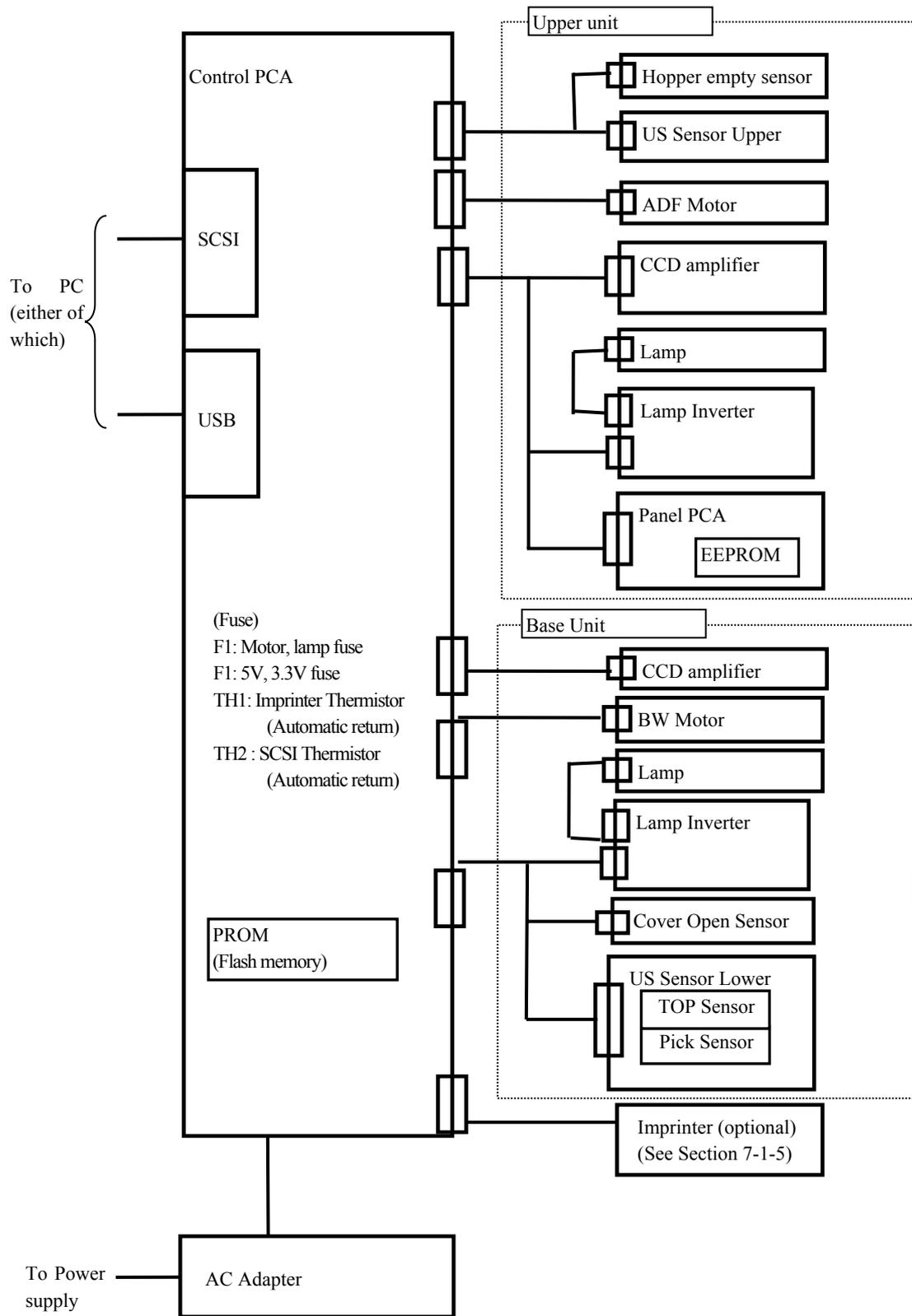
(2) Panel PCA

The Panel PCA in operator panel includes not only the switch and operator panel described in [Section 1-1-3](#), but also EEPROM that records the information below. When replacing the Panel PCA with new one, you need to move all data stored in the EEPROM to the Control PCA, and then return the data from the Control PCA to the new Panel PCA.

- Magnification correction value for main/sub scanning direction
- Offset correction value for main/sub scanning direction
- White level correction value
- Values of Pad counter and Pick counter
- First date of the scanner operation, ADF scanned number of documents

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	31/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

2-4 Electric Component Block Diagram



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	32/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

Chapter 3 Troubleshooting

3-1 Self-diagnosis function

3-1-1 Scanner status display and self-diagnostics at power-on

(1) Operator panel display sequence at power-on

The following display is shown during initial processing.

Function No. Display	Power LED	Description
	ON	Displays "8" without blinking. Immediately after power-on, scanner turns all the segments ON.

When the initial processing starts, the following display is shown.

Function No. Display	Power LED	Description
	ON	Displays "P" without blinking. It indicates scanner is currently in initial processing.

When the lamp intensity is getting close to the standard value, the following display is shown.

Function No. Display	Power LED	Description
	ON	Displays "0" without blinking. It indicates the lamp intensity is getting close to the standard value.

When the initial processing terminates properly, the following display is shown.

Function No. Display	Power LED	Description
	ON	Displays default Function No. without blinking. It indicates that scanner is in ready state.

The Function No. is incremented by 1 every time the Function button is pressed. After Function No. 9 is displayed, the number changes to "C" and then returns to "0".

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	33/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

(2) Self-diagnostics

The scanner checks the following items at power-on and displays error or alarm if any.

No.	Check items		Error display		Remarks
			Scanner display	TWAIN display	
1	ROM sum check		F	None	
2	SPC check		Ed	None	
3	RAM, LSI check		Ec	None	
4	Image SD RAM check		E9	None	
5	EEPROM check		E7	None	
6	Mechanical initial check	Ejects any documents on TOP sensor	None	None (*1)	
		Performs driving test for rollers if no sensor in the ADF detects any paper.	E4	See *2	
7	Motor fuse check		E4	See *2	
	SCSI fuse check		E8	None	

(*1): There is no error display immediately after power-on. The error "Paper jam" is displayed when the driver sends Reading command to the scanner.

(*2): Irregular status is detected in scanner. If this status recurs after power cycling, please give following Sense key and ASC code to your service provider.

If ASC code is the following, please confirm following status before power cycling?

- When ASC=0x580, confirm if the shipping lock (if any) is set at "Release" position.
- When ASC=0x680, clean the sheet guide (white part) in ADF.

(Code DS42001)

3-1-2 Online self-diagnostics**(1) Self-diagnostics when receiving Load Command**

The scanner checks the following items when receiving Load Command (to feed paper) and displays the result if any error or alarm is detected.

No.	Check items		Error display		Remarks
			Scanner display	TWAIN display	
1	Motor fuse check		E4	See *1	
2	Paper jam check		UI	"Paper jammed in ADF."	

(*1): Irregular status is detected in scanner. If this status recurs after power cycling, please give following Sense key and ASC code to your service provider.

If ASC code is the following, please confirm following status before power cycling?

- When ASC=0x580, confirm if the shipping lock (if any) is set at "Release" position.
- When ASC=0x680, clean the sheet guide (white part) in ADF.

(Code DS42001)

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	34/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

(2) Self-diagnostics when receiving Read Command

The scanner checks the following items when receiving Read Command (to start scanning) and displays the result if any error or alarm is detected.

No.	Check items	Error display		Remarks
		Scanner display	TWAIN display	
1	Light intensity check (gain adjustment for CCD amplifier)	E2	See *1	
		E3		
2	Motor fuse check	E4		
3	Paper jam check	UI	“Paper jammed in ADF.”	
4	Multi feed detection	U2	A multi feed is detected.	When multi feed is enabled.

(*1): Irregular status is detected in scanner. If this status recurs after power cycling, please give following Sense key and ASC code to your service provider.

If ASC code is the following, please confirm following status before power cycling'

- When ASC=0x580, confirm if the shipping lock (if any) is set at “Release” position.
- When ASC=0x680, clean the sheet guide (white part) in ADF.

(Code DS42001)

3-1-3 Self-diagnostics in Maintenance mode

The scanner checks the following items during maintenance mode and displays the result if any error or alarm is detected.

No.	Check items	Maintenance mode			Error display		Remarks
		At power on	#1 *2	#2 ~ #4	Scanner display	TWAIN display	
1	ROM sum check	√			F	None	
2	RAM, LSI check	√			Ec	None	
3	Image SDRAM check	√			E9	None	
4	EEPROM check	√			E7	None	
5	Mechanical check Eject any documents on TOP sensor. Performs driving test for rollers if no sensor in the ADF detects any paper.	√			None	None	
		√			E4	None	
6	5V and 3.3V fuse check (*3)	√			- (*1)	None	
	Motor fuse check	√	√		E4	None	
	SCSI fuse check	√			E8	None	
7	Light intensity check (gain adjustment for CCD amplifier)		√	√	E1	None	
			√	√	E2		
			√	√	E3		
8	Paper jam check		√		U1	None	

(*1): In this case, scanner does not power on.

(*2): Maintenance mode #1 does not detect multi feeding.

(*3): When 5V, 3.3V fuse is blown, the scanner does not turn on.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	35/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

3-2 Temporary errors and Alarm detection algorithm

3-2-1 Temporary errors

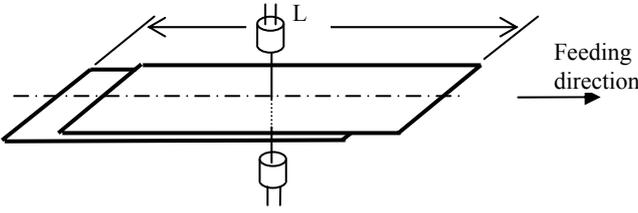
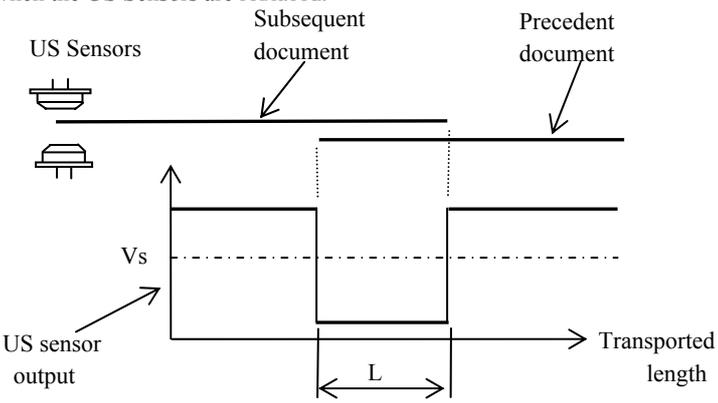
Temporary errors occur during scanning operation and can be remedied by an operator. The temporary errors are displayed on the PC screen through the driver and/or on the operator panel.

The display and detection algorithm of the temporary errors are described below.

(1) Temporary errors and detection algorithm

No.	Error display		Detection algorithm and action to recover						
	Scanner display	TWAIN display							
1	U1	Paper jammed in the ADF (Code DS32002)	<p>Paper jam</p> <p>This error is detected when one of the followings occurs:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) A document does not reach the TOP sensor while the scanner has transported the document about 250 mm to pick. (The scanner performs retry operation.) 2) The trailing edge of a document does not reach the TOP sensor after the scanner transports the document by the length (L) below. (The document may have slipped on the rollers) <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Scan condition</td> <td>Transported length (L) before jam</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ADF fixed size scanning</td> <td>Approximately 450 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Long paper scanning</td> <td>1.2 times of the specified value</td> </tr> </table> <p>If the imprinter is installed, paper jam can occur in the following case. If the scanner starts scanning when the imprinter cable (EXT cable) is not connected to the scanner, it does not rotate the imprinter, since it recognizes the imprinter not installed, which results in paper jam in the imprinter section.</p> <p>How to recover: Remove the jammed document and close the ADF. When the error frequently occurs, refer to Section 3-3-13.</p>	Scan condition	Transported length (L) before jam	ADF fixed size scanning	Approximately 450 mm	Long paper scanning	1.2 times of the specified value
Scan condition	Transported length (L) before jam								
ADF fixed size scanning	Approximately 450 mm								
Long paper scanning	1.2 times of the specified value								
2	None	No paper on ADF paper chute or Hopper (Code DS32003)	<p>No papers on the ADF paper chute (Chute Unit)</p> <p>This error occurs when the Hopper empty sensor detects no paper loaded on the ADF paper chute (Chute Unit) at the receipt of a Feed command.</p> <p>How to recover: Load documents on the ADF paper chute (Chute Unit). When the error frequently occurs, replace Sensor EM by referring to Section 4-9-7.</p>						

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	36/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

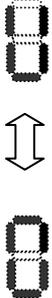
No.	Error display		Error detection algorithm and action to recover
	Scanner display	TWAIN display	
3	U2	The multi feed is detected. (Code DS32006)	<p>Multi feed</p> <p>Two methods are used to detect this error, either/both of which can be selected by the command. Both methods are set to OFF at default.</p> <p>1) Multi feed detection by paper length</p> <p>Using the TOP sensor, the scanner measures the length of the document transported for the first time after the hopper empty error. The measured length is used as a standard length to be compared with the length of subsequent documents to be scanned.</p> <p>If the second document is shorter than the first one, it means the multi feed occurred at the first document.</p> <p>The scanner detects a multi feed when the detected paper length is larger or smaller than the standard value by $\pm 10\text{mm}$, $\pm 15\text{mm}$ or $\pm 20\text{mm}$ which is specified by the command. Immediately after a multi feed error is detected, the feeding operation stops.</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">L - paper length $> \pm 10, \pm 15, \pm 20$ (selectable)</p> <p>2) Double feed detection by ultrasonic sensors (US Sensors)</p> <p>The ultrasonic sensors (US Sensor, see Section 2-1) are located above and below the document transporting section. The ultrasonic wave emitted from the transmitter goes through the document and is read at the receiver. When two sheets exist between the ultrasonic sensors, the output at the receiver is lower compared to when one sheet exists. When sensor output is consistently lower by 3mm than the specified slice level (V_s), a double feed is detected. (See Section 1-1-5 for document condition.)</p> <p>The specified slice level needs to be set by referring to Section 5-1-2 when the US Sensors are replaced.</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">$L > 3 \text{ mm}$: Double feed</p> <p>How to recover:</p> <p>Remove the document and close the ADF. When the error frequently occurs, refer to Section 3-3-16.</p>

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	37/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

No.	Error display		Detection algorithm and action to recover
	Scanner display	TWAIN display	
4	U4	The hopper is open. Close the ADF... (Code DS32005)	<p>ADF cover open</p> <p>This error occurs when the Cover Open Sensor detects that the ADF is not closed at the receipt of a Feed command.</p> <p>When the imprinter option is installed, the Cover Open Sensor detects that the printing section is open.</p> <p>How to recover:</p> <p>Close the ADF and the Printing Section. When the error frequently occurs, replace Base Unit by referring to Section 4-8.</p>
5	U6	Ink cartridge is not installed in... (Code DS32010)	<p>No print cartridge</p> <p>When the imprinter option is installed, no print cartridge mounted is detected during scanning.</p> <p>How to recover:</p> <p>Check if the print cartridge is mounted. Mount it if not.</p>

(2) Temporary error scanner display

When a temporary error occurs, the scanner displays the following:

Function No. Display	Power LED	Description (supplement)
	ON	<p>Displays “U” and the error No. (0~8) alternately.</p> <p>Example)</p> <p>When error “U0” occurs, the scanner displays the following:</p> <p>“U” → “0”</p>

When [Scan](#) or [Send to](#) button is pressed while the alarm is displayed, the scanner returns to the “Ready” display (Function number display).

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	38/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

3-2-2 Alarms

Alarms require the maintenance conducted by an authorized service person. The following table shows the display and detection algorithm for alarms. The alarms are displayed on a PC screen and/or on the operator panel (Function No. Display).

(1) Alarms and their detection algorithm

No.	Error display		Error occurrence algorithm and action to recover	Related section
	Scanner display	TWAIN display		
1	E2	See *1.	E2: Optical alarm (front) E3: Optical alarm (back) This alarm occurs if the gain adjustment of the CCD amplifier does not succeed at a READ command for the first document, or during scanning. (Refer to (3) in Section 2-2) Probable causes: - The Lamp, the optical system or white reference is dirty. - Defective Lamp or CCD - Connector disconnected - Defective Control PCA (E3)	3-3-17
2	E3			
3	E4	See *1.	Motor fuse blown This alarm occurs immediately after the motor fuse is blown. For maintenance, the whole unit of the Control PCA needs replacing because the fuse is soldered to the Control PCA. Probable causes: - A bit of metal material dropped on the Control PCA - Insulating material of motor cable damaged - Insulation corrupted inside the motor	3-3-18
4	E5	None	Imprinter motor fuse blown This alarm occurs immediately after the Imprinter motor fuse is blown. For maintenance, the whole unit of the Imprinter Control PCA needs replacing because the fuse is soldered to the Control PCA. Probable causes: - A bit of metal material dropped on the Control PCA - Insulating material of motor cable damaged - Insulation corrupted inside the motor	3-3-32
5	E6 (Note1)	None	Operator panel alarm When replacing the Panel PCA, the EEPROM data shall be moved to the Control PCA and the information that no data exists on the Panel PCA is written to the EEPROM of the Panel PCA. If the scanner detects that there is no data in EEPROM during initial processing at power-on, this alarm occurs. Probable cause: The Panel PCA on which no data exists is used in the scanner.	3-3-19
6	E7 (Note1)	Irregular status is detected in scanner... (Code DS42001)	EEPROM alarm This alarm is detected by comparing data in EEPROM during initial processing immediately after power-on. Probable cause: Damaged EEPROM in Panel PCA.	3-3-20

(*1): Irregular status is detected in scanner. If this status recurs after power cycling, please give following Sense key and ASC code to your service provider.

If ASC code is the following, please confirm following status before power cycling?

- When ASC=0x580, confirm if the shipping lock (if any) is set at "Release" position.
- When ASC=0x680, clean the sheet guide (white part) in ADF.

(Code DS42001)

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	39/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

No.	Error display		Error occurrence algorithm and action to recover	Related section
	Scanner display	TWAIN display		
7	E8 (Note1)	None	SCSI fuse blown This alarm is detected during initial processing immediately after power-on. Probable causes: - Defective SCSI cable - Other SCSI device malfunction	<u>3-3-21</u>
8	E9 (Note1)	Irregular status is detected in scanner... (Code DS42001)	Image memory alarm This alarm is detected by checking read/write and bus only while initial processing immediately after power-on. Probable causes: - Defective memory - Defective Control PCA	<u>3-3-22</u>
9	EA		Imprinter alarm This alarm occurs when the scanner detects the irregular status in the scanner or communication is not enabled after the scanner recognized the imprinter. The error occurs in one of the following condition. - Ink cartridge pin short - Imprinter PCA anomaly -After recognizing the imprinter, the scanner becomes unable to communicate with it. (This error is not detected unless the imprinter recognized.) If the Imprinter Control PCA is damaged, the scanner can normally start up if power is re-supplied, but the imprinter does not operate. (As the imprinter is recognized not installed, the roller does not rotate, resulting in paper jam.) If the scanner Control PCA is damaged, the same error occurs even if power is re-supplied. If the cause is difficult to be found out, however, either of the Control PCA of the scanner or the imprinter needs to be replaced. Probable causes: - EXT cable not connected - Ink cartridge error - Defective Control PCA of the scanner or imprinter	<u>3-3-28</u>
10	Ec	None	RAM alarm This alarm is detected by checking read/write and bus. Probable cause: - Defective Control PCA	<u>3-3-23</u>
11	Ed	None	SPC alarm This alarm is detected by checking read/write and bus. Probable cause: - Defective Control PCA	<u>3-3-24</u>
12	EF	(Note 2)	Background changeover unit failure This is detected in initial checking at power on. Probable causes: - Defective Control PCA - Insulation material damage of BW Motor cable or the damage of the wire in the motor.	<u>3-3-33</u>

Note 1) The alarm E6 ~ E9 is displayed 3 times before "O" during the initial processing after power-on. When more than 2 of these errors occur simultaneously, they are displayed in the order of the priority described below:

E6 > E7 > E8 > E9
High priority ←————→ Low priority

The scanner can perform scan operation even if these alarms occur, but it may not be the same operation as usual. For instance, when EEPROM is damaged, the document is scanned by default settings, which means the settings of magnification, offset and white level may not be optimum for the document to be scanned. When image memory is damaged, irregular image may appear which can be easily detected by visual check.

Note 2) Irregular status is detected in the scanner. <Anomaly in Background change operation.> If the status remains after turning OFF and ON the scanner, please contact and inform your service provider about the following Sense Key and ASC code.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	40/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

No	Error display		Error occurrence algorithm and action to recover	Related section
	Scanner display	TWAIN display		
13	None	Insufficient buffer memory size of scanner device for current scanning parameters... (Code DS00008)	Image transfer error This alarm is detected by the driver at malfunctioning operation in the circuit or memory during scanning. Probable cause: - Defective Control PCA	3-3-24
14	None	(See * below) SenseKey=0x5 ASC=0x20	Invalid command Irregular operation of the driver is required. Probable causes: See ** below.	3-3-34
15	None	(See * below) SenseKey=0x5 ASC=0x24	Invalid CDB field Irregular operation of the driver is required. Probable causes: See ** below.	
16	None	(See * below) SenseKey=0x5 ASC=0x25	Unsupported logical unit (LUN) Irregular operation of the driver is required. Probable causes: See ** below.	
17	None	(See * below) SenseKey=0x5 ASC=0x26	Invalid field parameter list Irregular operation of the driver is required. Probable causes: See ** below.	
18	None	(See * below) SenseKey=0x5 ASC=0x2C	Command sequence error Irregular operation of the driver is required. Probable causes: See ** below.	
19	None	(See * below) SenseKey=0x5 ASC=0x22C	Irregular window combination (Main window not defined) Irregular operation of the driver is required. Probable causes: See ** below	
20	None	Specified image scanner is being used.	Unit Attention This alarm is detected by the driver. Probable cause: The image scanner is being used by the other application or TWAIN driver booted twice.	-
21	None	An input-output error has occurred in the image scanner.	Message error This alarm is detected by the driver. Probable causes: - Image scanner failure (during scanning) - Abnormal response from SCSI or USB interface - Connection between PC and scanner is not correct (Cable connection, etc.) - Does not work with SCSI card - Miss-communication between PC and scanner - Defective Control PCA	-
22	None	An input-output error has occurred in the image scanner.	Select/Reselect Failure This alarm is detected by the driver. Probable causes: - Image scanner failure (during scanning) - Abnormal response from SCSI or USB interface - Connection between PC and scanner is not correct (Cable connection, etc.) - Does not work with SCSI card - Miss-communication between PC and scanner - Defective Control PCA	-

* Anomaly in the command for communicating with the scanner.

Check the scan area setting. If the setting is correct, turn the scanner off, disconnect the interface cable and firmly reconnect it. If the scanner does not return to its normal functioning state, please contact the dealer where you purchased the scanner or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider and inform the code displayed below.

** Probable causes: - Connection between PC and scanner is not correct. (Cable connection etc.)

- Scanner does not work with USB Card.

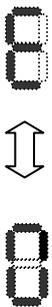
- Defective Control PCA

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	41/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

No	Error display		Error occurrence algorithm and action to recover	Related section
	Scanner display	TWAIN display		
23	None	An input-output error has occurred in the image scanner.	SCSI parity error This alarm is detected by the driver. Probable causes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Image scanner failure (during scanning) - Abnormal response from SCSI or USB interface - Connection between PC and scanner is not correct (Cable connection, etc.) - Does not work with SCSI card - Miss-communication between PC and scanner - Defective Control PCA 	-
24	None	An input-output error has occurred in the image scanner.	Initiator Detected Error Message Received This alarm is detected by the driver. Probable causes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Image scanner failure (during scanning) - Abnormal response from SCSI or USB interface - Connection between PC and scanner is not correct (Cable connection, etc.) - Does not work with SCSI card - Miss-communication between PC and scanner - Defective Control PCA 	-
25	None	An input-output error has occurred in the image scanner.	Overlapped Command Attempted This alarm is detected by the driver. Probable causes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Image scanner failure (during scanning) - Abnormal response from SCSI or USB interface - Connection between PC and scanner is not correct (Cable connection, etc.) - Does not work with SCSI card - Miss-communication between PC and scanner - Defective Control PCA 	-

(2) Alarm displayed on the operator panel

When an alarm occurs, the scanner displays the following on the operator panel:

Function No. Display	Power LED	Description (supplement)
	ON	Displays "E" and one of the alarms (0 ~ 9) alternately. The example shown in the left column is the case of Alarm "E0". The display sequence is: "E" → "0" The interval of changing the display is approximately 1 second.

When **Scan** or **Send to** button is pressed while the alarm is displayed, the scanner returns to the "Ready" display (Function number display).

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	42/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

3-2-3 Flash memory status display

The display and detection algorithm of the flash memory status are described below.

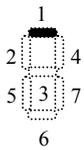
(1) Error status display

The following display appears when a check sum error occurs:

Function No. Display	Power LED	Description (supplement)
	ON	“F” is displayed without blinking on the Function No. Display.

(2) Flash memory (firmware) update display

The following display appears while the firmware is being updated.

Function No. Display	Power LED	Description (supplement)
	ON	<p>The Function No. Display changes in the order below.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Lights 1 → 2 → 3 → 4 2) Goes out 1 → 2 → 3 → 4 3) Lights 3 → 5 → 6 → 7 4) Goes out 3 → 5 → 6 → 7 <p>The step 1) ~ 4) is repeated. The interval of changing the display is approximately 0.5 seconds.</p>

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Oakda	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	43/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

3-3 Troubleshooting

When a temporary error or an alarm occurs, find the troubleshooting procedure from the list in this section and go to the related section for maintenance. Before starting the troubleshooting, get the following information from your customer to understand whether the error is scanner-related or system-related.

- Is the scanner operated correctly?
- Are the fault symptoms reproducible or persistent?
(Check if the target scanner causes the same error under other systems.)

NOTICE

The troubleshooting should be conducted from item number 1 to the last item number in a table. Continue the troubleshooting until the error is removed.

Following lists the case of troubleshooting described later in this section.

Error category	Error description	Related section	Remarks
Device	Scanner does not turn ON. (Display of the operator panel goes out)	3-3-1	
	Scanning does not start.	3-3-2	
	Scanned image is distorted.	3-3-3	
Image	Resolution or gradation of scanned image is unsatisfactory.	3-3-4	
	(Reserved)	3-3-5	
	(Reserved)	3-3-6	
	(Reserved)	3-3-7	
	Too much jitter on scanned image with ADF scanning	3-3-8	
	Scanned image is misaligned with ADF scanning	3-3-9	
	Scan magnification factor abnormal with ADF scanning	3-3-10	
	Vertical streaks appear in scanned image	3-3-11	
	When calibrating white of scanned image	3-3-12	
Temporary error	Frequent "U1: Paper jam error"	3-3-13	
	Error detection of "No paper on the ADF paper chute (Chute Unit)"	3-3-14	
	Error detection of "U4: Cover open"	3-3-15	
	Frequent "U2: Multi feed error"	3-3-16	
Alarm	"E2 or E3: Optical alarm"	3-3-17	
	"E4: Motor fuse blown"	3-3-18	
	"E6: Operator panel alarm"	3-3-19	
	"E7: EEPROM alarm"	3-3-20	
	"E8: SCSI fuse blown"	3-3-21	
	"E9: Image memory alarm"	3-3-22	
	"Ec: RAM alarm"	3-3-23	
	"Ed: SPC alarm" or "Image transfer error"	3-3-24	
	"EF: Background changeover unit failure"	3-3-33	
	"F: ROM sum check alarm"	3-3-25	
	Driver error	3-3-34	
Imprinter-related	Imprinter does not initially operate	3-3-26	
	"U6: No print cartridge"	3-3-27	
	"E5: Imprinter motor fuse blown"	3-3-32	
	"EA: Imprinter alarm"	3-3-28	
	No printing / Printed letters are distorted	3-3-29	
	Print form is dirty	3-3-30	
	Printing is interrupted in process	3-3-31	

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION				
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	44/176

3-3-1 Scanner does not turn ON (No display on the operator panel)

Table 3-3-1

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.
	Are the AC cable and AC Adapter correctly connected?	---
2	Replace the AC cable and AC Adapter and see if the error is resolved.	---
3	Replace Panel PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 4-9-1 .
4	Replace Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 4-11 .

3-3-2 Scanning does not start

Table 3-3-2

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Does the same symptom appear when turning the scanner ON again?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.
2	Check the items listed in the right column.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Are the AC cable and AC Adapter correctly connected? • Is there documents loaded on ADF paper chute (Chute Unit)? • Is ADF cover completely closed? • Is interface cable correctly connected? • Is SCSI ID correctly set? • If any temporary error or alarm is indicated, follow the corresponding troubleshooting.

3-3-3 Scanned image is distorted

Due to loose connection of connectors, cut wire in cables or defective parts, scanned image may have regular or random pattern distortion on it.

Table 3-3-3

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Check the items listed in the right column.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is interface cable correctly connected? • If any temporary error or alarm is indicated, follow the corresponding troubleshooting.
2	Are the cables between Control PCA and Optical Unit damaged? Or are the connectors connected correctly?	ADF front scanning: See Section 4-10-6 for checking. ADF back scanning: See Section 4-9-4 for checking.
3	Replace Optical Unit and see if the error is resolved.	ADF front scanning: See Section 4-10-6 for replacement. ADF back scanning: See Section 4-9-4 for replacement.
4	Replace Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 4-11 .

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	45/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

3-3-4 Resolution or gradation of scanned image is unsatisfactory

Table 3-3-4

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Check the items listed in the right column.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Does the document satisfy the paper specifications described in Section 1-1-4? Are the scan settings correctly specified for the application software used? Is interface cable correctly connected? If any temporary error or alarm is indicated, follow the corresponding troubleshooting.
2	Clean feed rollers and plastic roller and check whether the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 1-6-1 .
3	Is the Optical Unit or Lamp dirty? Are the cables damaged? Or are the connectors connected correctly?	ADF front scanning: See Section 4-3-1 for cleaning and checking. ADF back scanning: See Section 4-3-3 for cleaning and checking.
4	Is the Optical Unit for this scanner installed?	ADF front scanning: See Section 4-10-6 for removal. ADF back scanning: See Section 4-9-4 for removal.
5	Replace Optical Unit and see if the error is resolved.	ADF front scanning: See Section 4-10-6 for replacement. ADF back scanning: See Section 4-9-4 for replacement.
6	Replace Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 4-11 .

3-3-5 Reserved**3-3-6 Reserved****3-3-7 Reserved**

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Oakda	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	46/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

3-3-8 Too much jitter on scanned image with ADF scanning

The following shows the sample of scanned image when “Jitter” error occurs. This error occurs when the ADF feed roller does not transport the document smoothly.

Scanned image with jitter

ABCDEFGFG

Normal scanned image

ABCDEFGFG

Table 3-3-8

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Does the document satisfy the paper specification?	Refer to Section 1-1-4 .
2	Clean feed rollers and plastic roller and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 1-6-1 .
3	Replace Pick roller and Pad ASY and see if the error is resolved.	Check the consumable counter from the TWAIN driver screen or in the built-in Maintenance mode. When the counter exceeds the values shown in Section 1-7-1 , replace Pick roller or Pad ASY.
4	Check if the belt tension is appropriate, and if the Guide A ASSY, Guide P ASSY (Sheet Guide), Upper cover, and Rear cover are installed correctly.	Refer to Section 4-10-1 for Guide A ASSY, 4-8 for Guide P ASSY (Sheet Guide) and Rear cover, and 4-9-2 for Upper cover.
5	Are the cables between Control PCA and ADF Motor damaged? Or are the connectors connected correctly?	Refer to Section 4-9-3 .
6	Replace ADF Motor and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 4-9-3 .
7	Replace Upper Unit and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 4-8 .
8	Replace Base Unit and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 4-8 .

3-3-9 Scanned image is misaligned with ADF scanning

Table 3-3-9

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Check the items listed in the right column.	- Does the document satisfy the paper specifications described in Section 1-1-4 ? - Are the scan settings correct for the application software used?
2	Clean feed rollers and plastic roller and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 1-6-1 .
3	Adjust the offset by Maintenance mode.	Refer to Section 5-1-4 .
4	Is Optical Unit installed correctly?	ADF front: Refer to Section 4-10-6 . ADF back: Refer to Section 4-9-4 .
5	When the backside image is misaligned, replace Upper Unit and see whether the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 4-8 .
6	When the front side image is misaligned, replace Base Unit and see whether the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 4-8 .

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	47/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

3-3-10 Scan magnification factor abnormal with ADF scanning

Table 3-3-10

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Check the items listed in the right column.	Are the scan settings correct for the application software used?
2	Adjust the magnification in Maintenance mode.	Refer to Section 5-1-3 . When main scanning magnification is abnormal: Go to Item No.3 When sub-scanning magnification is abnormal: Go to Item No.7
3	Clean feed rollers roller and plastic roller and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 1-6-1 .
4	Does any foreign object get inside Upper Unit and disturb transporting operation by feed rollers?	Open the ADF and check Upper Unit gear.
5	Is ADF Motor belt loose?	Refer to Section 4-9-3 .
6	Replace ADF Motor and see whether the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 4-9-3 .
7	Is Optical Unit installed correctly?	ADF (front) scanning: Refer to Section 4-10-6 .
8	Replace Optical Unit and see whether the error is resolved.	ADF (back) scanning: Refer to Section 4-9-4 .

3-3-11 Vertical streaks appear in scanned image

Table 3-3-11

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Check the items listed in the right column.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Are the scan settings correctly specified for the application software used? Is interface cable correctly connected?
2	Clean glass in the ADF and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 1-6-1 .
3	When the error occurs on ADF front, clean inside of the glass of Upper Unit ASSY. 06 When the error occurs on ADF back, clean inside of the glass of Dust Cover ASSY.	Refer to Section 4-3-4 for cleaning Upper Unit ASSY. 06 Refer to Section 4-3-2 for cleaning Dust Cover ASSY.
4	Is Optical Unit dirty? Are cables damaged? Are connectors connected correctly?	ADF front: Refer to Section 4-3-1 for cleaning and checking. ADF back: Refer to Section 4-3-3 for cleaning and checking.
5	Replace Optical Unit and see if the error is resolved.	ADF front: Refer to Section 4-10-6 for replacement procedure. ADF back: Refer to Section 4-9-4 for replacement procedure.
6	Replace Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 4-11 .

3-3-12 When calibrating white of scanned image

Table 3-3-12

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Check the items listed in the right column.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Are the scan settings correct for the application software used? Is the white reference in the ADF dirty?
2	Conduct the white adjustment by Maintenance mode.	Refer to Section 5-1-5 .

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	48/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

3-3-13 Frequent “U1: paper jam” error

Table 3-3-13

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Do the documents satisfy paper specification?	Refer to Section 1-1-4 for paper specification.
2	Have the documents been jogged?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Align the edge of documents for stable paper feeding. Remove documents with crease or dog-ear. Scanning different width of documents may cause skew and result in paper jam.
3	Is the Imprinter EXT cable correctly connected to the scanner?	Cables in step 6 in Section 7-2-2 . (only when the Imprinter is installed)
4	Clean rollers in ADF and Imprinter and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 1-6-1 for rollers in ADF. Refer to Section 7-4-3 for rollers in Imprinter. (only when the Imprinter is installed)
5	Replace Pick roller and Pad ASY and see if the error is resolved.	Check the consumable counter from the TWAIN driver screen or from the built-in Maintenance mode (Section 5-1-6). When the counter exceeds the values shown in Section 1-7-1 , replace Pick roller or Pad ASSY.
6	IS the Pick roller rotating?	Refer to Section 5-1-2 for checking. If the Pick roller is not rotating, check the clutch cable connection.
7	Check the performance of TOP sensor.	Refer to Section 5-1-2 for checking.
8	Is ADF Cover Open Sensor malfunctioning?	Refer to Section 5-1-2 for checking.
9	Check if the Sensor lever moves smoothly. Install it correctly if not move smoothly.	Refer to Section 7-5-8 (only when the Imprinter is installed). Replace the Sensor if defective.
10	Replace the Motor LF if the imprinter roller does not rotate.	Refer to Section 7-5-10 (only when the Imprinter is installed).
11	Replace the Imprinter Control PCA.	Refer to Section 7-5-7 (only when the Imprinter is installed).
12	Replace the Scanner Control PCA.	Refer to Section 4-11 .

3-3-14 Error detection of “No paper on the ADF paper chute (Chute Unit)”

Table 3-3-14

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.
2	Is there a slip of paper left near Hopper empty sensor?	Open the ADF and check inside visually.
3	Check the performance of Hopper empty sensor.	Conduct Maintenance mode (refer to Section 5-1-2) to see if the sensor works properly. If the error still occurs, confirm that the cable is correctly connected then replace the Sensor EM. (Refer to Section 4-9-7)

3-3-15 Error detection of “U4: Cover open”

Table 3-3-15

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.
2	Is there a slip of paper left near Cover Open Sensor?	Open the ADF and check inside visually.
3	Check the performance of Cover Open Sensor.	Conduct Maintenance mode (refer to Section 5-1-2) to see if the sensor works properly. If the error still occurs, confirm that the cable is correctly connected. If the sensor is damaged, replace the Base Unit (Refer to Section 4-8).
4	Check if the Imprinter Cover Open Sensor performs correctly.	Replace the Imprinter Cover Open Sensor if damaged. Refer to Section 7-5-9 (only when the Imprinter is installed).

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	49/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

3-3-16 Frequent “U2: multi feed error”

Table 3-3-16

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Do the documents satisfy paper specification?	Refer to Section 1-1-4 and 1-1-5 for paper specification, paying attention to the following points: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is multi feed error detected by paper length when scanning documents with different length? Is there perforation in the center of documents?
2	Clean ADF unit.	Refer to Section 1-6-1 for cleaning cycle and method. Clean pick roller, Pad ASY and around US Sensor with care.
3	Replace Pick roller and Pad ASY and see if the error is resolved.	Check the consumable counter from the TWAIN driver screen or from the built-in Maintenance mode (Section 5-1-6). When the counter exceeds the values shown in Section 1-7-1 , replace Pick roller or Pad ASY. If the error still occurs, confirm that the cable is correctly connected then replace the sensor. (Refer to Sections 4-9-6, 4-10-3)

3-3-17 “E2 or E3: Optical alarm”

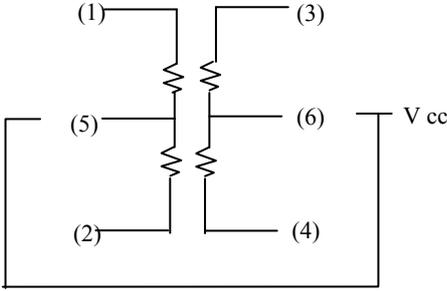
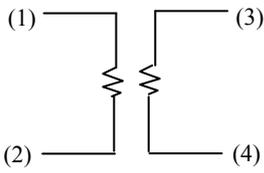
Table 3-3-17

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.
2	Is the white reference in the reading position dirty?	Open the ADF and clean the white reference and the glass. (Refer to Section 1-6-1 .)
3	Is the Lamp ON? Are the cables damaged? Are the connectors connected correctly?	Disconnect SCSI cable and turn the scanner ON. Open the ADF and press Cover Open Sensor to see if the Lamp lights. If not, the error is caused by the defective Lamp.
4	Is the Optical Unit dirty? Are the cables damaged? Are the connectors connected correctly?	E2 (ADF front): Refer to Section 4-3-1 for cleaning and checking. E3 (ADF back): Refer to Section 4-3-3 for cleaning and checking.
5	When the error is E2 (ADF front), check if inside of the glass for Dust cover is dirty.	Clean inside of the glass of the Dust cover by following the procedure described in Section 4-3-2 .
6	When the error is E3 (ADF back), check if inside of the glass for Upper ASSY is dirty.	Clean inside of the glass of the Upper ASSY by following the procedure described in Section 4-3-4 .
7	Replace Optical Unit and see if the error is resolved.	E2 (ADF front): See Section 4-10-6 . E3 (ADF back): See Section 4-9-4 .

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	50/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

3-3-18 “E4: Motor fuse blown”

Table 3-3-18

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.
2	Does any foreign object get inside the Control PCA?	Take out the Control PCA for checking (Refer to Section 4-11).
3	Are the cables between Control PCA and the motor damaged? Or are the connectors connected correctly?	Refer to Section 4-9-3 for checking the cable.
4	Is the coil resistance of the motor normal?	<p>Remove the motor cable to check the coil resistance between the following pins of the motor.</p> <p>ADF Motor</p> <p>(5)Black-(1)Red, (5)Black-(2)Yellow approx.4.7 Ω (6)White-(3)Orange, (6)White-(4)Blue approx.4.7 Ω (1)Red-(2)Yellow, (3)Orange-(4)Blue approx.9.4 Ω Other matches Infinity</p>  <p>BW Motor</p> <p>(1)Black-(2)Brown approx.30 Ω ± 10% (3)Yellow-(4)Orange approx.30 Ω ± 10% Other matches Infinity</p>  <p>Replace the motor if the resistance is abnormal. (Refer to Section 4-9-3, 4-10-7)</p>
5	Replace Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 4-11 for replacement.

3-3-19 “E6: Operator panel alarm”

Table 3-3-19

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.
2	It seems the installed Panel PCA has been used in other scanner before and it may be faulty one. Replace it with the new Panel PCA.	Replace the Panel PCA with new one after saving the EEPROM data. (See Section 5-2) Then conduct Maintenance mode #7 by referring to Section 5-1-8 .

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	51/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

3-3-20 “E7: EEPROM alarm”

Table 3-3-20

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.
2	Replace the Panel PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 4-9-1 for replacement.
3	Replace the Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 4-11 for replacement.

3-3-21 “E8: SCSI fuse blown”

Table 3-3-21

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.
2	Check if the SCSI cable or other SCSI devices connected to the scanner cause this error.	The scanner can work even after this error occurs. Go to item 3 if you want to remove this error.
3	Replace the Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 4-11 for replacement.

3-3-22 “E9: Image memory alarm”

Table 3-3-22

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.
2	Replace the Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 4-11 for replacement.

3-3-23 “Ec: RAM alarm”

Table 3-3-23

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.
2	Replace the Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 4-11 for replacement.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	52/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

3-3-24 “Ed: SPC alarm / Image transfer error”

Table 3-3-24

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.
2	Replace the Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 4-11 for replacement.

3-3-25 “F: ROM sum check alarm”

Table 3-3-25

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.
2	Replace the Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 4-11 for replacement.

3-3-26 “Imprinter does not initially operate” (only when the Imprinter is installed)

Table 3-3-26

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Check if the Imprinter EXT cable is correctly connected to the scanner.	Refer to step 6 in Section 7-2-2 .
2	Replace the Imprinter Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 7-5-7 .
3	Replace the Scanner Control PCA.	Refer to Section 4-11 .

3-3-27 “U6: No print cartridge” (only when the Imprinter is installed)

Table 3-3-27

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Check if the Print cartridge is correctly installed.	Refer to Section 7-2-3 .
2	Remove the Print cartridge and check if the electrode at the attaching area is dirty.	Clean it if dirty by referring to Section 7-4-1 .
3	Replace the Print cartridge and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 7-3-4 .
4	The performance between the Print cartridge and Control PCA may be defective. Check the connection of the parts on the right and replace them if necessary.	The parts that may need to be replaced: Holder ASSY (Section 7-5-6) PR Cable (Section 7-5-11) Junction PCA (Section 7-5-5)
5	Replace the Imprinter Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 7-5-7 .

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	53/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

3-3-28 “EA: Imprinter alarm” (only when the Imprinter is installed)

Table 3-3-28

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Check if the Print cartridge is installed properly.	Refer to Section 7-2-3 .
2	Replace the Print cartridge and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 7-3-4 .
3	Connect the EXT cable from the Imprinter correctly and see if the error is resolved.	The description of the connector is in step 6 in Section 7-2-2 .
4	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.
5	Replace the Imprinter Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 7-5-7 .
6	Replace the Scanner Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 4-11 .

3-3-29 “No printing / Printed letters are distorted” (only when the Imprinter is installed)

Table 3-3-29

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Check if the screen on the Section 7-3-4 is displayed.	If the screen appears, replace the print cartridge (Refer to Section 7-3-4).
2	Turn ON/OFF the power several times and perform printing. Does the same symptom occur? (Be sure that the scanner becomes “Ready” before turning it OFF.)	
3	Clean the nozzle of the Print cartridge and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 7-4-1 .
4	The performance between the Print cartridge and Control PCA may be defective. Check the connection of the parts on the right and replace them if necessary.	The parts that may need to be replaced: Holder ASSY (Section 7-5-6) PR Cable (Section 7-5-11) Junction PCA (Section 7-5-5)

3-3-30 “Print form is dirty” (only when the Imprinter is installed)

Table 3-3-30

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Is the Imprinter unit dirty by ink? Open the printing section to check it. 	Refer to the following sections to clean up. 7-4-1 , 7-4-2 , 7-4-3
2	Replace the Felt.	Refer to Section 7-5-12 .

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	54/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

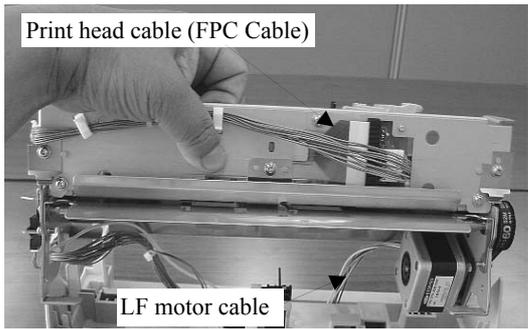
3-3-31 “Printing is interrupted in process” (only when the Imprinter is installed)

Table 3-3-31

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Check if the printing position is specified within the printable area. (Refer to Section 7-1-1 for Printing area, and Section 7-3-3 for print setting.) Does the appropriate size (length) of paper used?	Check if the printing section or length is out of the printing area.
2	The performance between the Print cartridge and Control PCA may be defective. Check the connection of the parts on the right and replace them if necessary.	The parts that may need to be replaced: Holder ASSY (Section 7-5-6) PR Cable (Section 7-5-11) Junction PCA (Section 7-5-5)
3	Replace the Imprinter Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 7-5-7 .

3-3-32 “E5: Imprinter motor fuse blown”

Table 3-3-32

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Check visibly if there are any foreign objects around CN2 (Imprinter connector) on the Scanner Control PCA.	Refer to Section 4-11 .
2	Check visibly if there are any foreign objects on the Imprinter Control PCA.	Refer to Section 7-5-7 .
3	Check visibly if there are any problems on the FPC Cable (print head cable) or LF motor cable.	
4	Replace the Imprinter Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 7-5-7 .
5	Replace the Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 4-11 for replacement procedure.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	55/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

3-3-33 “EF: Background changeover unit failure”

Table 3-3-33

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.
2	Are the cables between the Control PCA and the BW Motor damaged? Or are the connectors connected correctly?	Confirm the position of the BW Motor by referring to Section 4-10-7 and check the cables.
3	Is the CCD cable F or B damaged? Or are the connectors connected correctly?	Refer to Section 4-9-4 for the CCD cable B. Refer to Section 4-10-6 for the CCD cable F.
4	Replace the Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 4-11 for replacement procedure.
5	Replace the Optical Unit and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 4-10-6 for replacement procedure of the lower Optical Unit. Refer to Section 4-9-4 for replacement procedure of the upper Optical Unit.

3-3-34 Driver error

Table 3-3-34

Item No.	Check items	How/where to check
1	Does the same symptom occur after turning OFF and ON the scanner?	Press power button of the scanner for more than 2 seconds to turn it OFF, and after more than 2 seconds elapse, press the power button to turn the scanner ON.
2	Is the connector between the scanner and the PC correctly connected?	Refer to Section 1-4-2 .
3	Replace the Control PCA and see if the error is resolved.	Refer to Section 4-11 for replacement.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	56/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

Chapter 4 DISASSEMBLY / ASSEMBLY

This chapter describes how to replace the maintenance parts, and clean the scanner to ensure the normal operations. When assembling the maintenance parts, conduct necessary cleaning when instructed in this manual.

4-1 For the safety operation

Please read this page carefully before disassembling or assembling.



Warning

Electric shock

Before disassembling and assembling, turn the power switch off, and unplug the AC power source from the outlet. If you do not do this, an electric shock may occur.



CAUTION

Injury

Be careful not to get your fingers, hair, clothes or accessories caught in a moving part. It may cause injury.

Machine damage

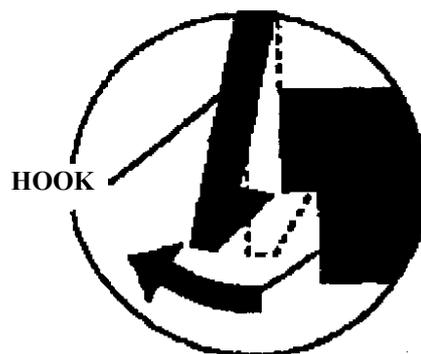
Static Electricity may cause the damage to the scanner.
When repairing the scanner, wear a wrist strap to avoid ESD.

Notes when cleaning

When cleaning the scanner, be careful not to allow foreign matter, such as dried ink and toner, to fall inside the scanner.

How to unlock Plastic hooks

Many parts of the scanner are held in place with plastic hooks.
When removing parts that are held in place with hooks, be very careful not to break the hooks.
Pull out the latch to unlock, then pull up on the assembly to remove.



Do not use excessive force when removing parts held in place with hooks.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	57/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

4-2 Maintenance

This section describes about basic maintenance service.

4-2-1 Periodic maintenance

This scanner is recommended to have periodic maintenance according to the following cycle.

Item	Maintenance cycle
Periodic maintenance	Every 12 months

At maintenance, clean the following if they are dirty.

- Optical Unit (Sections 4-3-1, 4-3-3)
- Glass of Dust cover (Section 4-3-2)
- Glass of Upper ASSY (Section 4-3-4)

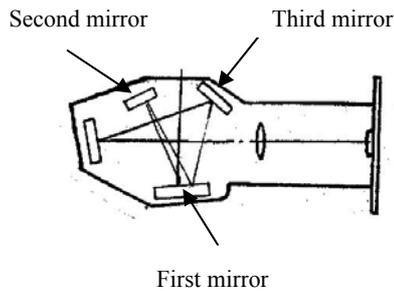
05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	58/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

4-3 Cleaning

4-3-1 Cleaning Optical Unit (for front side)

Follow the procedure below to clean the Optical Unit.

- (1) Remove the Optical Unit. (Refer to [Section 4-10-6](#))
- (2) Clean the mirrors (especially the first mirror shown below) inside the Optical Unit with a dry lint-free cloth or a blower brush.
- (3) After cleaning, mount the Optical Unit. (Refer to [Section 4-10-6](#))



NOTICE

1. Do not use any cleaning liquid such as alcohol that may smear the mirrors when cleaning. Use a dry cloth or a blower brush.
2. Reflecting sides of the mirrors (aluminum vapor deposition part) face inside of the Optical Unit.
3. Conduct the procedure under dust-free environment.

4-3-2 Cleaning glass of Dust Cover ASSY (lower glass)

Follow the procedure below to clean the glass of Dust Cover ASSY.

- 1) Remove the Dust Cover ASSY. (Refer to the steps (1) to (5) in [Section 4-10-5](#)). No need to remove the plastic rollers.
- 2) Clean inside of the glass of the Dust Cover ASSY with a lint-free cloth moistened with alcohol. Be sure that no fabric from the cloth remains on the glass.
- 3) After cleaning, mount the Dust Cover ASSY. (Refer to [Section 4-10-5](#))

NOTICE

1. Take care not to damage the Lamp.
2. Conduct the procedure under dust-free environment.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	59/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

4-3-3 Cleaning Optical Unit (for back side)

Follow the procedure below to clean the Optical Unit.

- 1) Remove the Optical Unit. (Refer to [Section 4-9-4](#))
- 2) Clean the mirrors (especially the second and third mirrors shown in [Section 4-3-1](#)) inside the Optical Unit with a dry lint-free cloth or a blower brush. Be sure that no fabric from the cloth remains on the mirror.
- 3) After cleaning, mount the Optical Unit. (Refer to [Section 4-9-4](#))

NOTICE

1. Do not use any cleaning liquid such as alcohol that may smear the mirrors. Use a dry cloth or a blower brush.
2. Reflecting sides of the mirrors (aluminum vapor deposition part) face inside of the Optical Unit.
3. Conduct the procedure under dust-free environment.

4-3-4 Cleaning glass of Upper ASSY (upper glass)

Follow the procedure below to clean the glass of Upper ASSY.

- 1) Remove the Optical Unit. (Refer to the steps (1) to (4) in [Section 4-9-4](#)). No need to remove the Lamp sensors.
- 2) Clean inside of the glass of the Upper ASSY with a lint-free cloth moistened with alcohol.
- 3) After cleaning, mount the removed parts. (Refer to [Section 4-9-8](#))

NOTICE

Conduct the procedure under dust-free environment.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Oakda	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	60/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

4-4 Maintenance tool

Special tools to clean this scanner are shown in table 4-4.

Table 4-4

No.	Tools	When to use	Remarks
1	Philips screwdriver		For M3, M4 screws
2	Small Philips screwdriver	Removing Control PCA and BW Motor	For M2.5 screws
3	Spring balance	Belt tension adjustment	Max 1 kg force
4	Alcohol	Cleaning	Ethyl alcohol or isopropyl alcohol
5	Blower brush	Cleaning mirror	
6	Small flat-blade screwdriver	Removing connector	
7	White level adjustment sheet	White level adjustment (See Section 5-1-5)	Description: TEST SHEET Part number: PA03277-Y123 Please purchase this sheet prior to maintenance.
8	Magnification/Offset adjustment sheet	Magnification/Offset adjustment (See Sections 5-1-3 , 5-1-4)	Required for offset or magnification adjustment. See figure 5-1-3 (Section 5-1-3) and prepare the sheet in advance, if you do not have the sheet.

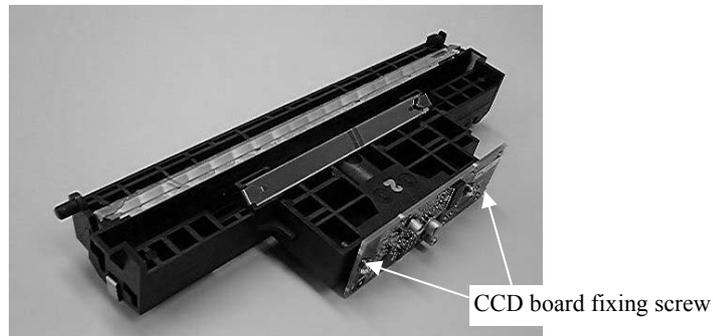
05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	61/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

4-5 Parts that should not be Disassembled

NOTICE

The following screws are adjusted and secured at shipment from factory. Do not attempt to disassemble nor loose them.

(1) Optical Unit



4-6 Removing / Installing the Chute Unit (ADF paper chute)

4-6-1 How to remove/install the Chute Unit (ADF paper chute)

NOTICE

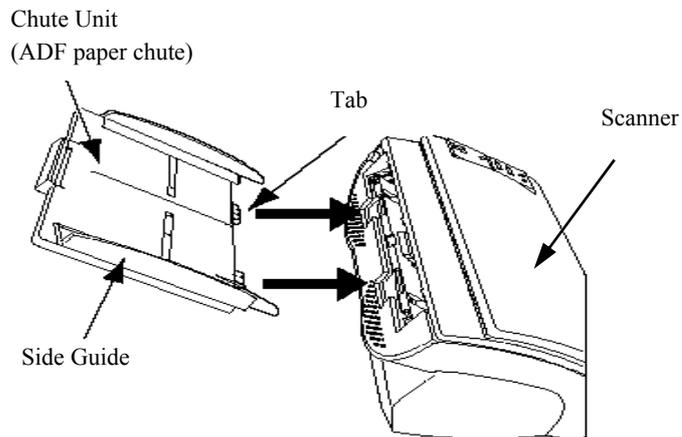
Refer to [Section 6-19](#) for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removing>

Pull the Chute Unit (ADF paper chute) out from the scanner.

<Installing>

Hold the Chute Unit (ADF paper chute) and insert its tabs into the corresponding slots in the scanner as shown in the figure below.



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	62/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

4-6-2 How to remove/install the Stacker Unit

NOTICE

Refer to Section 6-18 for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removing>

- 1) Hold the left side of the stacker with left hand.



- 2) While pressing on the scanner with your thumb, pull the stacker gently away from the scanner.



2. Carefully pull the stacker out

1. Pressing your thumb on the scanner,

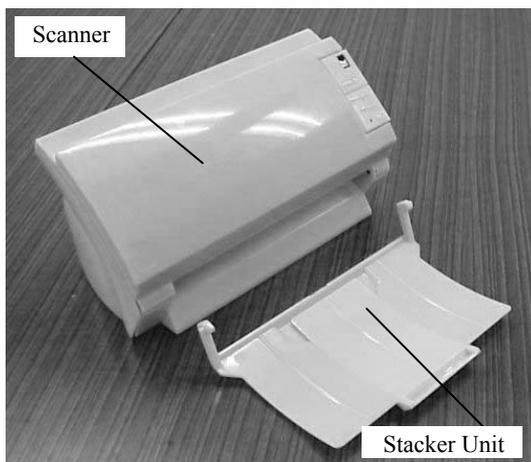
- 3) When the left side of the stacker has been released from the scanner, remove the right side of the stacker.



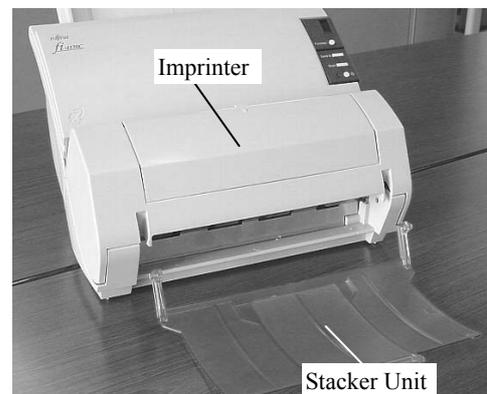
<Installing>

Follow the above procedure in reverse.

fi-5120C



With fi-512PR installed

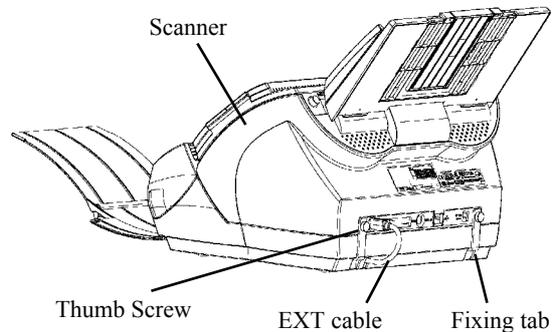


05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL			
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	63/176	
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DESIG		Aug.19, 2005	
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION				K.Okada	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR.	T.Anzai				

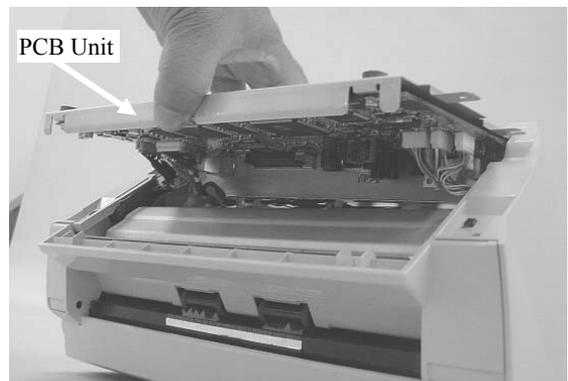
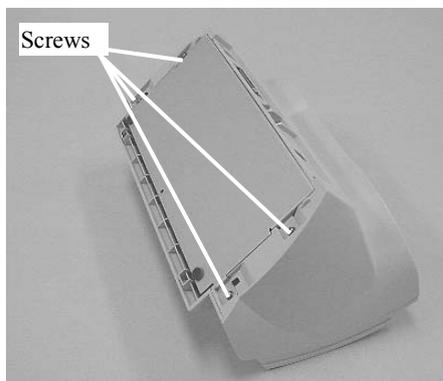
4-7 Removing / Installing the PCB Unit

<Removing>

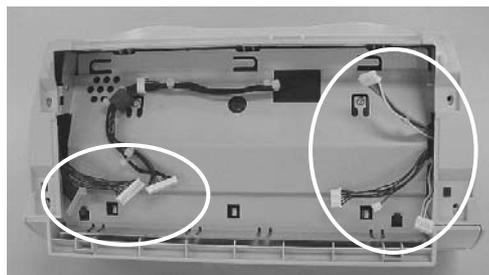
- 1) In case of the scanner with the Imprinter (option), disconnect the Imprinter EXT cable, remove the Thumb Screw of the fixing tab at the rear of the scanner. Then pick up the rear side of the scanner a bit (photo below) and remove the Imprinter to rear side.



- 2) Remove the Chute Unit (ADF paper chute) and the Stacker Unit (Refer to [Section 4-6](#)).
- 3) Remove 4 screws from the bottom of the Base Unit, and open the PCB unit as shown in the following photo, taking care not to pull the cables inside by force.



- 4) Disconnect 7 connectors, which are connected to the PCB Unit, and remove the PCB Unit. To replace the Control PCA, go to [Section 4-11](#).



<Installing>

Follow the above procedure in reverse.

1. Attach 4 connectors in the right circle.
2. Attach 3 connectors in the left circle.
3. Attach the PCB Unit.

Be careful not to pinch any cables between the PCB Unit and the scanner.

Note: Before attaching PCB unit on the scanner, press the cable inward to prevent the pinching of the cable band between the connector and scanner frame.

Otherwise the PCB unit does not close completely, and the connector may be damaged if you close the PCB unit by force.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	64/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

4-8 Removing / Installing the Upper Unit, the Guide P ASSY (Sheet Guide) and the Base Unit

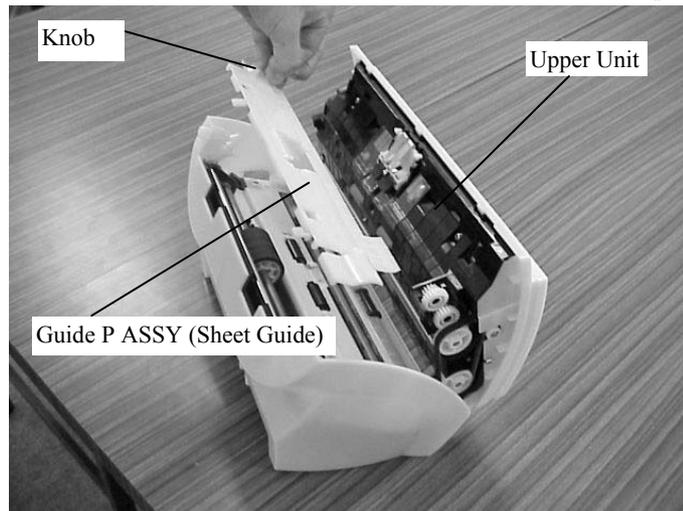
NOTICE

Be careful not to touch the glass window when disassembling.

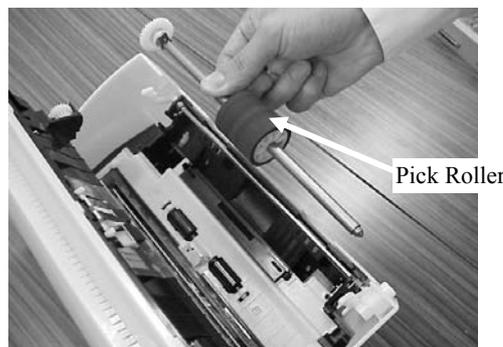
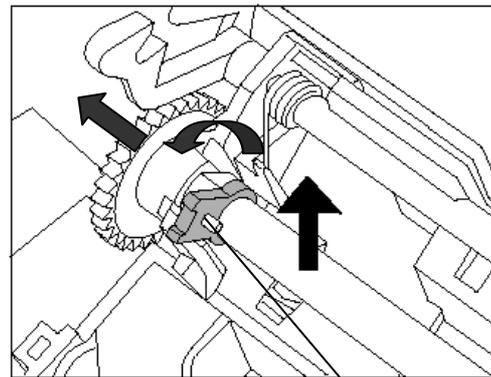
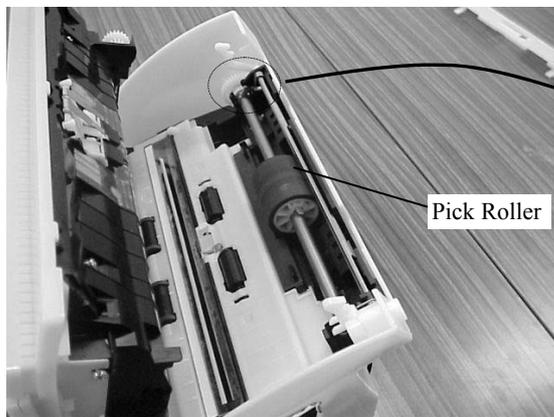
Refer to [Section 6-1](#) (Base Unit), [6-11](#) (Upper Unit) and [6-10](#) (Guide P ASSY=Sheet Guide) for the parts numbers of the replacement parts.

<Removing>

- 1) In case of the scanner with the Imprinter (option), remove the scanner from the Imprinter by referring to step (1) in [Section 4-7](#).
- 2) When replacing Upper Unit, remove Panel PCA at first by following the steps (2) and (3) in [Section 4-9-1](#).
Note that it is not necessary to save the EEPROM data from Panel PCA to Control PCA because this Panel PCA is attached again after replacing the Upper Unit.
- 3) Remove the PCB unit (Refer to [Section 4-7](#)).
- 4) Open the Upper Unit and hold the knob of the Guide P ASSY (Sheet Guide) to lift it up for removal.



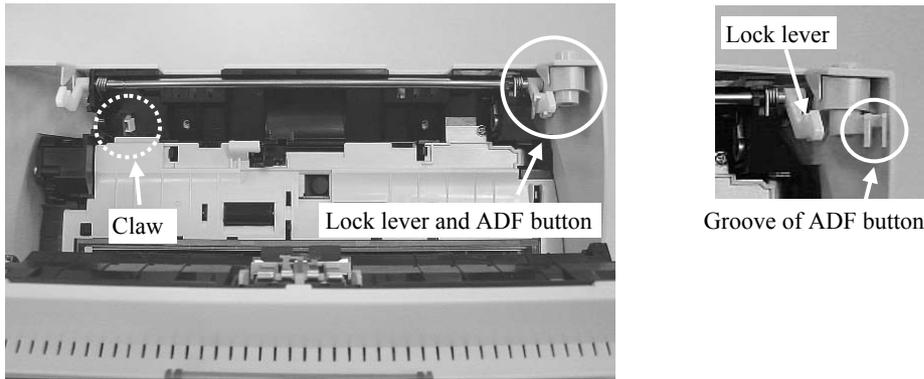
- 5) Rotate the bushing that holds the Pick Roller gear to remove one end of the roller shaft from the frame. Remove the other end of the roller shaft from the bushing to remove the Pick Roller completely.



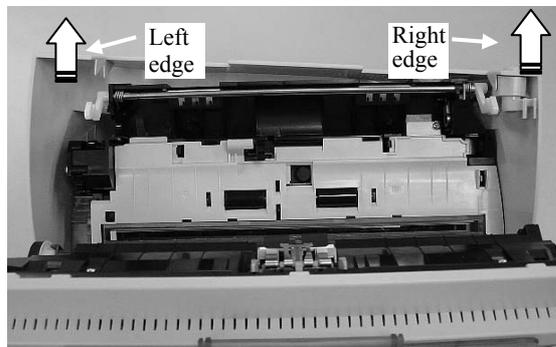
05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL				
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.	
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	REV		PFU LIMITED			
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR.	T.Anzai				PAGE	65/176

6) Detach the Rear Cover from the Base unit.

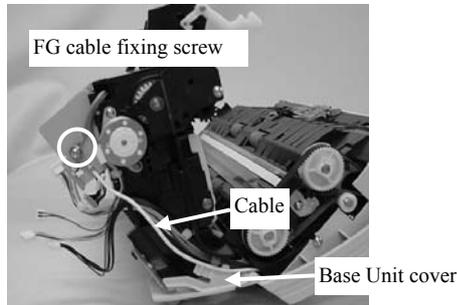
1. Unlatch the lock lever from the groove of the ADF button and lay the groove to right (photo on the right below).



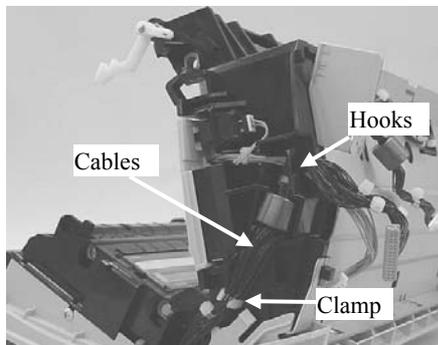
2. Unlatch the claw (dotted circle in the photo on the left above) of the Rear Cover which is connected to the frame of the Base Unit, remove the left edge of the Rear Cover, then the right edge.



7) Remove a FG cable fixing screw in the metal board that protects the PCA. Then remove the cables out from the cover in the Base Unit.

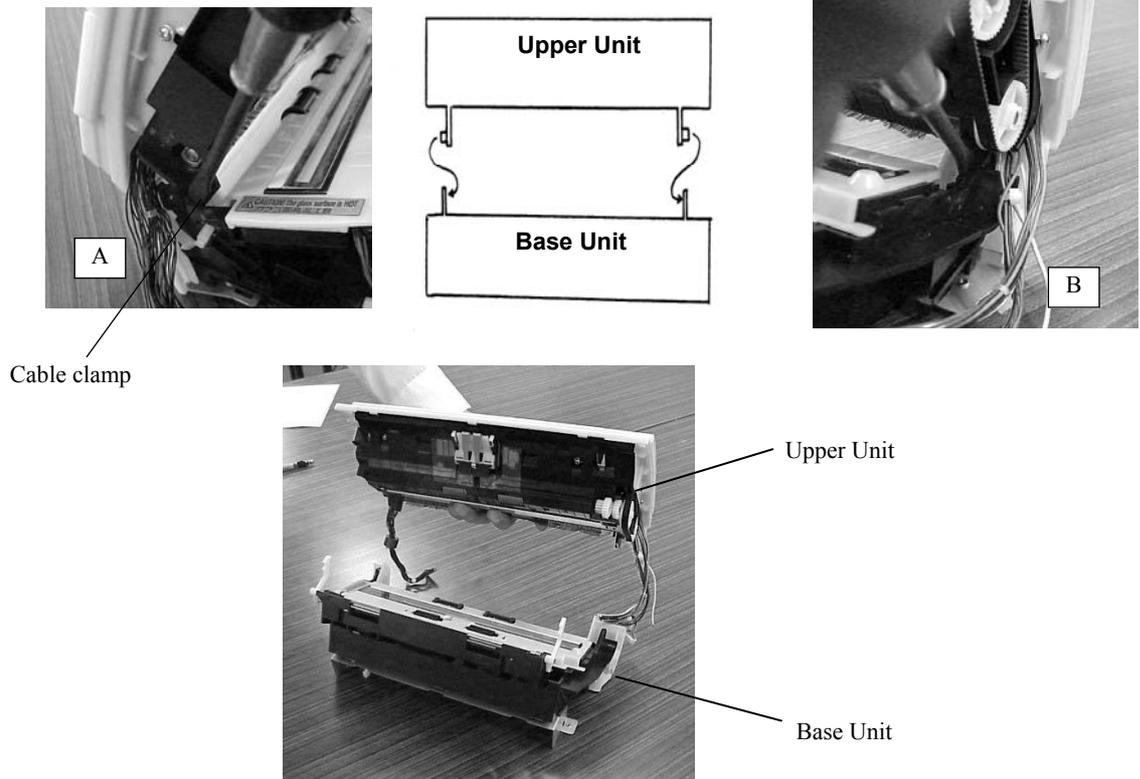


8) Remove the black wire cables from a cable clamp and hooks of the Base Unit.



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL							
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	Rev		DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.									
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR.	T.Anzai								

- 9) Insert a flat screwdriver between the side plates of the Upper Unit and the Base Unit at the fulcrum (shown as A and B in the figures below) and remove the fulcrum shaft from the hole, so that the Upper Unit and the Base Unit are separated. It will be easier to start from the A side.

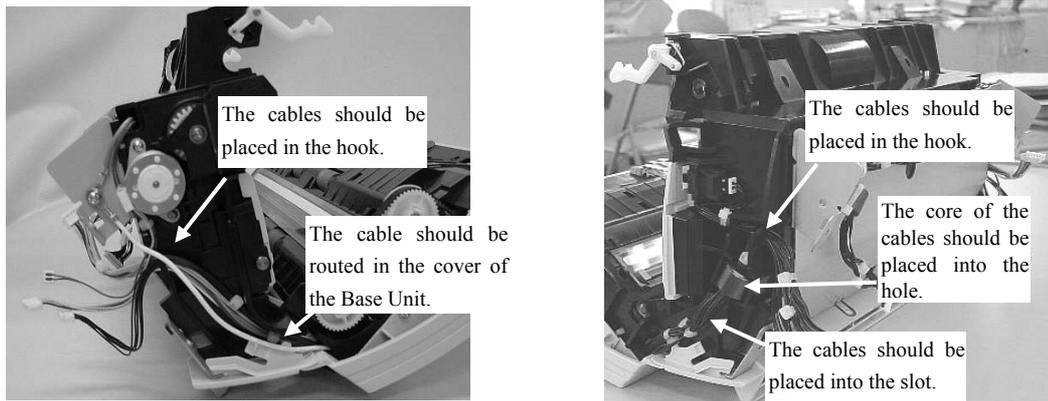


<Installing>

- 1) Follow the above procedure in reverse, paying attention to the notices below.

NOTICE

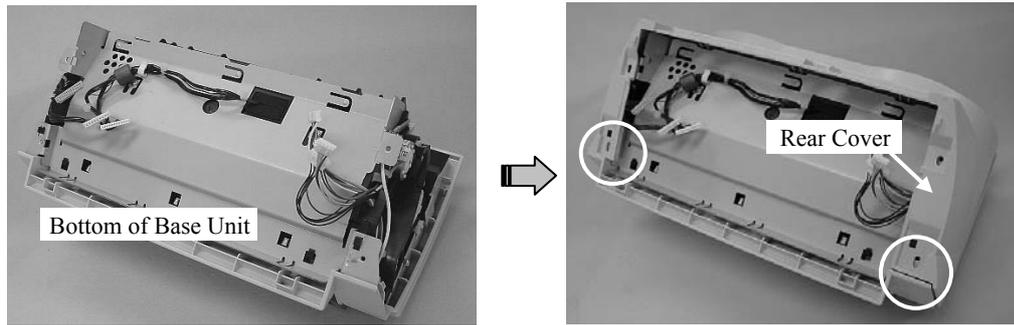
1. Clean the glass window with a lint-free cloth moistened with alcohol. Be sure that no fabric from the cloth remains on the glass.
2. When assembling the Rear Cover, confirm that the cables and core of the Upper Unit are placed as shown below



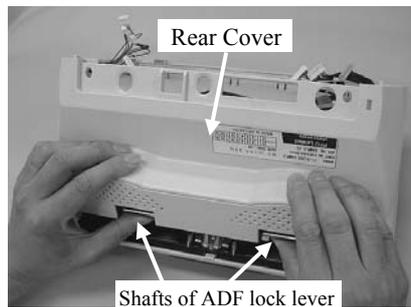
05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	67/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

[Installing the Rear Cover]

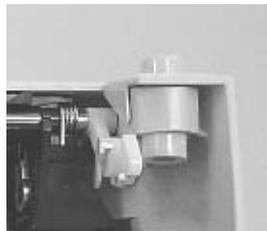
1. Place the Base Unit with its bottom facing up (photo on the left below), and fit the bottom of the Rear Cover into the Base Unit (photo on the right below).



2. Hold down the Rear cover and the shafts of the ADF lock lever (photo below) and insert the top of the Rear Cover into the Base Unit.



3. Insert the lock lever into the groove of the ADF button (photo below).



- 2) After installing the Upper Unit and the Base Unit, perform the following adjustment:
 - Magnification adjustment ([Section 5-1-3](#))
 - Offset adjustment ([Section 5-1-4](#))
 - White level adjustment ([Section 5-1-5](#))
- 3) After replacing the Upper Unit, reset the Pad Counter. ([Section 5-1-6](#)). After replacing the Base Unit, reset the Pick Counter as the Base Unit includes the Pick roller. ([Section 5-1-6](#))

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL			
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	Rev				
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR.	T.Anzai	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	68/176

4-9 Removing / Installing the parts in the Upper Unit

4-9-1 How to remove/install the Panel PCA

NOTICE

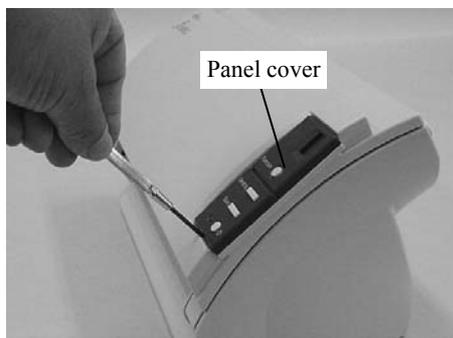
Refer to [Section 6-16](#) for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removing>

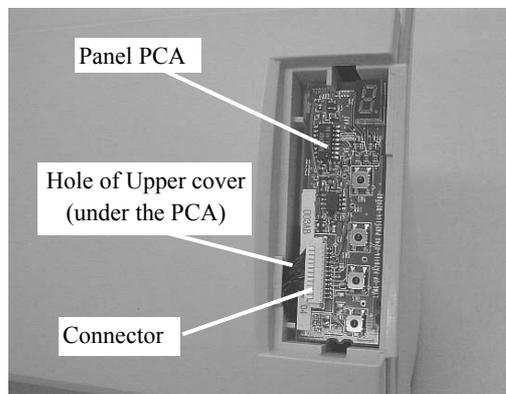
- 1) Temporarily move the EEPROM data installed on the Panel PCA into the Control PCA (Refer to [Section 5-2](#))

Note: This product has an EEPROM installed on the Panel PCA instead of on the Control PCA. This helps to reduce the data saving operations since the Control PCA requires frequent replacement.

- 2) Insert a flat screwdriver into a gap of the Panel Cover and Upper Cover, and remove the Panel Cover by unlatching the claw as shown below.



- 3) Take out the Panel PCA and disconnect one connector from the Panel PCA.



<Installing>

- 1) Follow the removing procedure in reverse.
- 2) After mounting a new Panel PCA, overwrite the EEPROM data that has been saved on the Control PCA into the new Panel PCA. (Refer to [Section 5-1-8](#))
- 3) Put the cables into the hole of Upper cover (see above photo). If the cables are accidentally placed between Panel PCA and Upper cover, the Panel PCA is lifted causing power button to be turned ON.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	69/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

4-9-2 How to remove/install the Lamp Inverter

NOTICE

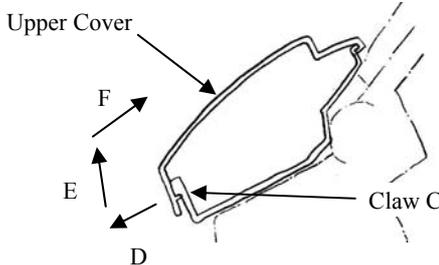
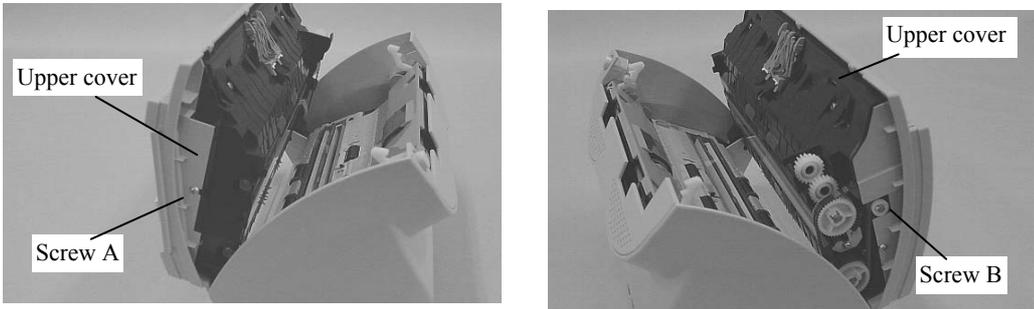
Conduct the procedure under dust-free environment.
 Refer to Section 6-2 for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removing>

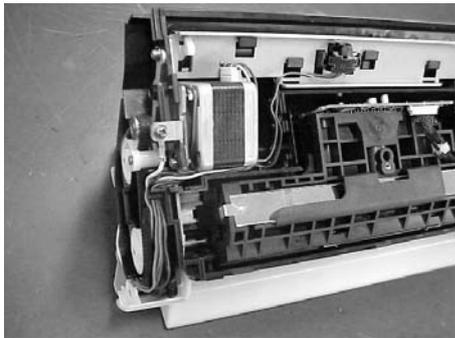
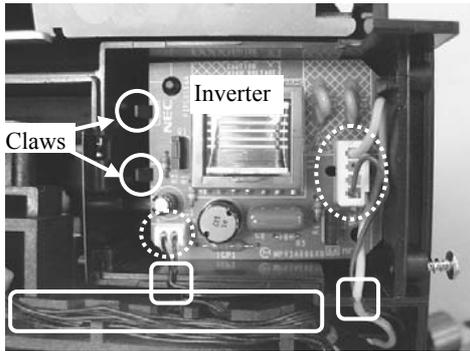
- 1) In case of the scanner with the Imprinter (option), remove the scanner from the Imprinter by referring to step (1) in Section 4-7.
- 2) Remove the Panel PCA. (Refer to steps (2) and (3) in Section 4-9-1.)
- 3) Loosen the self-tapping screws A and B. Pull the lower edge of the Upper cover in D direction to detach the Claw C, lift up the edge in E direction, then push the cover in F direction.

NOTICE

When removing the Upper cover, be careful not to turn the scanner upside down. Doing so may cause the Optical Unit to fall off since it is not fixed to the Upper ASSY.



- 4) Detach the (2) claws (solid circles in the photo on the left below).that hold the Lamp Inverter and disconnect (2) connectors (dotted circles in the photo on the right below) to remove the Lamp Inverter.



<Installing>

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

Note: When installing the Upper cover, do not pinch the cables.

1. Make sure that the cables are inserted in the grooves (3 places, square in the photo on the left above).
2. Make sure that the ADF Motor cable is inserted in the groove (photo on the right above).

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	70/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

4-9-3 Removing / Installing the ADF Motor

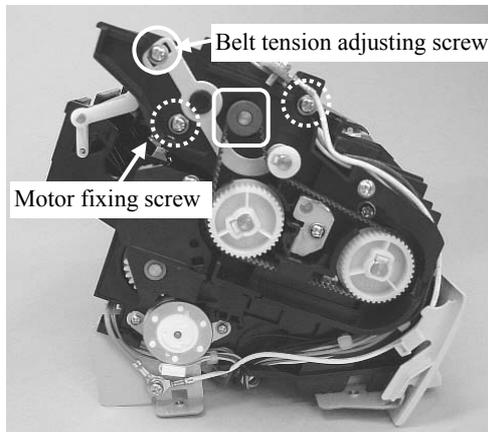
NOTICE

Conduct the procedure under dust-free environment.

Refer to [Section 6-13](#) for the part number of the replacement part.

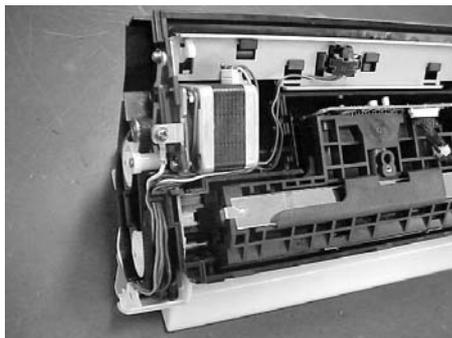
<Removing>

- 1) In case of the scanner with the Imprinter (option), remove the scanner from the Imprinter by referring to step (1) in [Section 4-7](#).
- 2) Remove the PCB unit. (Refer to [Section 4-7](#).)
- 3) Remove the Rear cover. (Refer to steps (4) ~ (6) in [Section 4-8](#).)
- 4) Remove the Panel PCA. (Refer to steps (2) and (3) in [Section 4-9-1](#).)
- 5) Remove the Upper Cover. (Refer to step (3) in [Section 4-9-2](#).)
- 6) Loosen a belt tension adjusting screw (solid circle in the photo below), and remove (2) ADF Motor fixing screws (dotted circles in the photo below). Remove the cable of the ADF Motor (square in the photo below) from the scanner, and take out the ADF Motor.



<Installing>

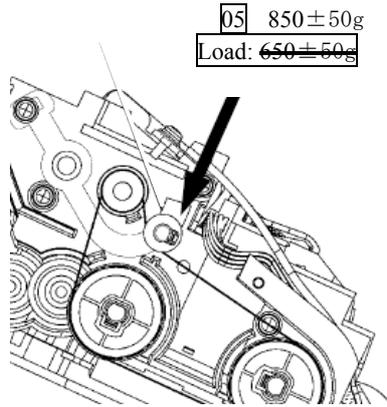
Follow the removing procedure in reverse. Arrange the ADF Motor cable as shown in the photo below:



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	71/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

After mounting the ADF Motor, adjust the belt tension so that the tension becomes the value shown in the figure on the next page, and fix the belt tension adjusting screw. 02

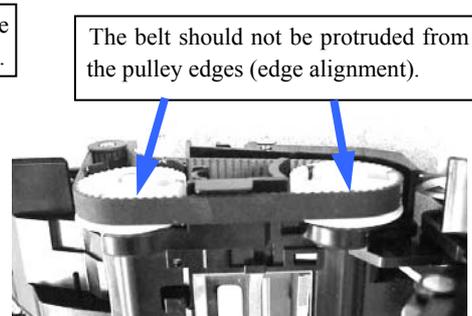
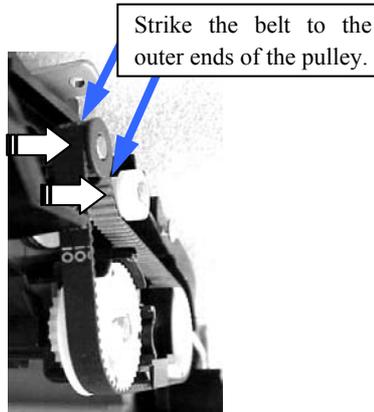
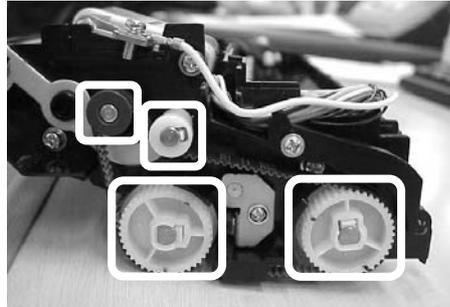
02



02

Note: Before adjusting the belt tension, perform the following actions:

- Loosen the tension adjusting screw 2 rotations.
- Strike the belt to the outer ends of four (4) pulleys (squares in the photo below).



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	72/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

4-9-4 Removing / Installing the Optical Unit (for ADF backside)

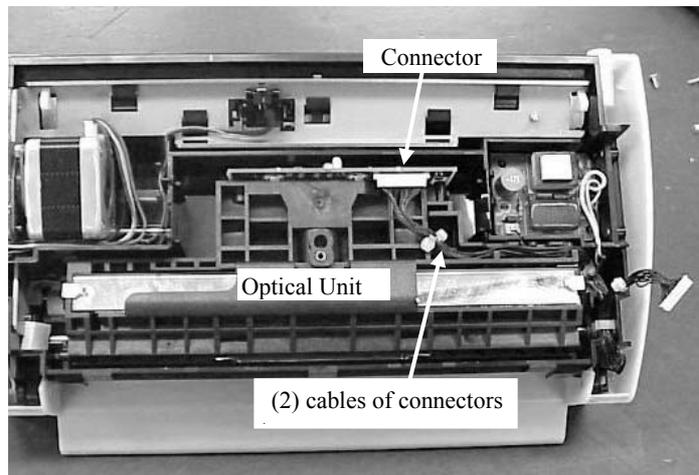
NOTICE

Conduct the procedure under dust-free environment.

Refer to [Section 6-7](#) for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removing>

- 1) In case of the scanner with the Imprinter (option), remove the scanner from the Imprinter by referring to step (1) in [Section 4-7](#).
- 2) Remove the Panel PCA. (Refer to steps (2) and (3) in [Section 4-9-1](#).)
- 3) Remove the Upper Cover. (Refer to step (3) in [Section 4-9-2](#).)
- 4) Remove a connector from the Optical Unit. Remove (2) cables from the groove of the Optical Unit. Then remove the Optical Unit.



<Installing>

- (1) If the mirror inside the Optical Unit is dirty, clean it with the blower brush or a dry cloth. Do not use alcohol as it may stain the mirror.
- (2) Follow the removing procedure in reverse. The cables should be routed in the way as shown in the photo above.
- (3) After mounting the Optical Unit, perform the following adjustment:
 - Magnification adjustment ([Section 5-1-3](#))
 - Offset adjustment ([Section 5-1-4](#))
 - White level adjustment ([Section 5-1-5](#))

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	73/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

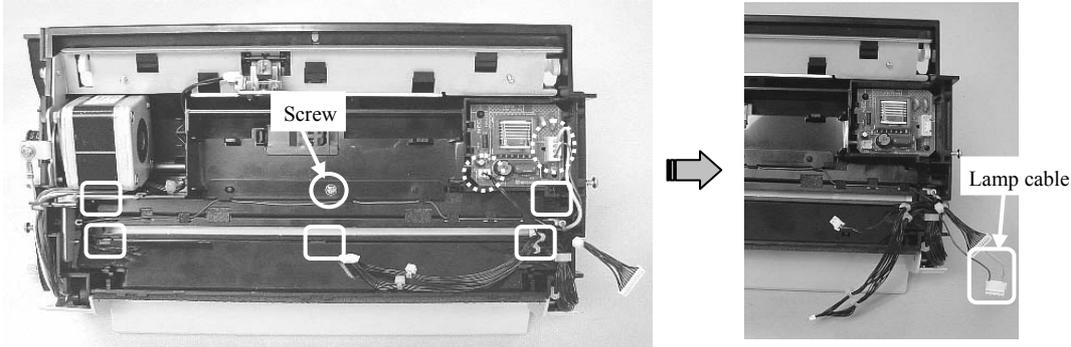
4-9-5 Removing / Installing the Lamp (for ADF backside)

NOTICE

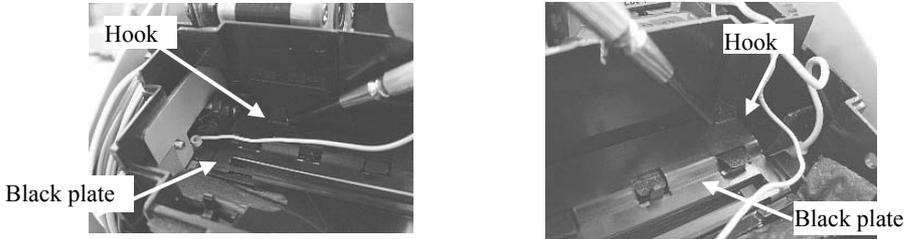
Conduct the procedure under dust-free environment.
 Refer to Section 6-3 for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removing>

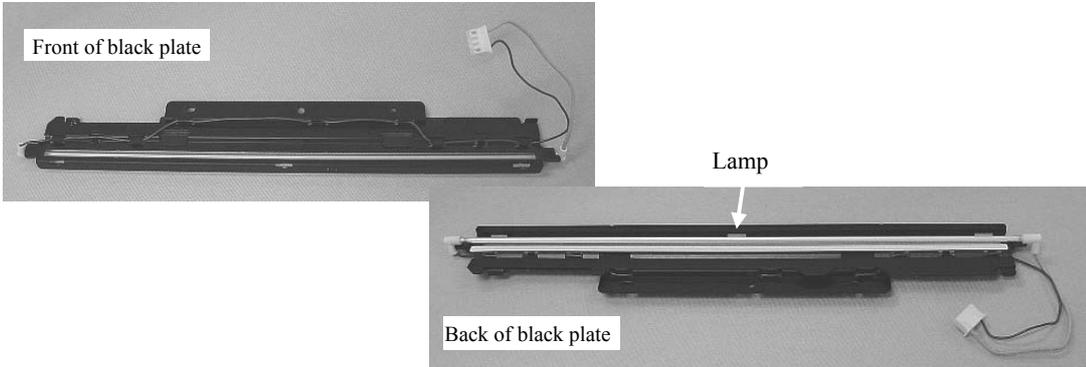
- 1) In case of the scanner with the Imprinter (option), remove the scanner from the Imprinter by referring to step (1) in Section 4-7.
- 2) Remove the Panel PCA. (Refer to steps (2) and (3) in Section 4-9-1.)
- 3) Remove the Upper Cover. (Refer to the step (3) in Section 4-9-2.)
- 4) Remove the Optical Unit. (Refer to the step (4) in Section 4-9-4.)
- 5) Disconnect (2) connector (dotted circles in the photo on the left below) of the Inverter and gather cables (4 bundles shown in the photo on the right below).



- 6) Remove a screw of the black plate (dotted circle in the photo on the left above). Then unhook (5) hooks (square in the photo on the right above) with a small flat-blade screwdriver and remove the black plate.



- 7) Unhook the Lamp cable from (7) hooks of the front side of the black plate and remove the Lamp.



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)	
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL	
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6	CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.			
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	74/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai			

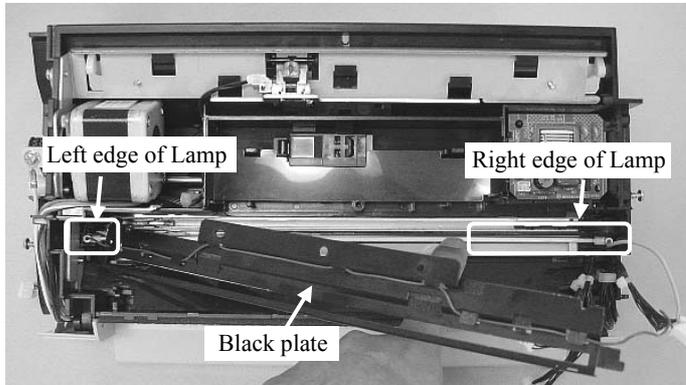
<Installing>

- 1) Follow the removing procedure in reverse. Take care not to fix the screw (for black plate) too tight as it is a self-tapping screw.

[Installing the black plate]

1. Insert the left edge of the Lamp into the groove of the Upper Unit (photo below).

Note: Place the black plate of which the Lamp cable is attached is facing up.

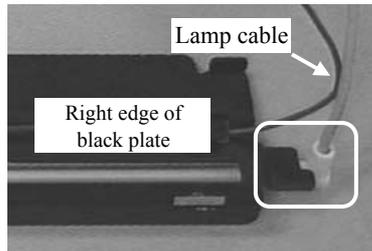


2. Insert the right edge of the Lamp into the groove of the Upper Unit (photo above).

Note: Place the black plate of which the Lamp cable is attached is facing up.

3. Attach the black plate to the Upper Unit.

Note: Fit the attaching part (facing up, photo below) to L-shape part at the right edge of the black plate.



- 2) After mounting the Lamp, perform the following adjustment:

- Magnification adjustment ([Section 5-1-3](#))
- Offset adjustment ([Section 5-1-4](#))
- White level adjustment ([Section 5-1-5](#))

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	75/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

4-9-6 Removing/ Installing the US Sensor Upper

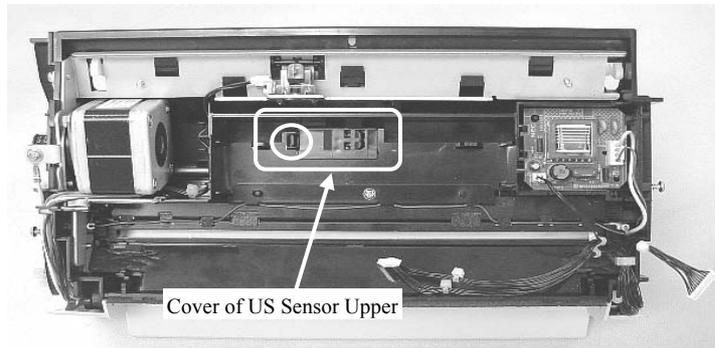
NOTICE

Conduct the procedure under dust-free environment.

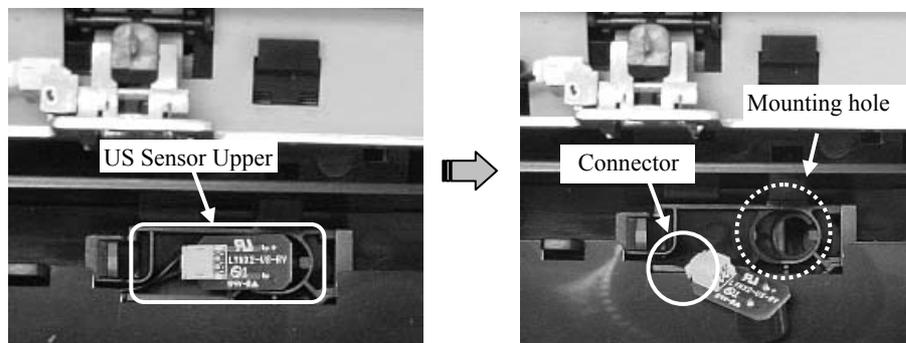
Refer to [Section 6-14](#) for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removing>

- 1) In case of the scanner with the Imprinter (option), remove the scanner from the Imprinter by referring to step (1) in [Section 4-7](#).
- 2) Remove the Panel PCA. (Refer to steps (2) and (3) in [Section 4-9-1](#).)
- 3) Remove the Upper Cover. (Refer to the step (3) in [Section 4-9-2](#).)
- 4) Remove the Optical Unit. (Refer to the step (4) in [Section 4-9-4](#).)
- 5) Remove the black plate. (Refer to step (6) in [Section 4-9-5](#).)
- 6) Unlatch a claw (solid circle in the photo below) on the cover of the US Sensor Upper and remove the cover (square in the photo below) of the US Sensor Upper.



- 7) Take the US Sensor Upper out of the mounting hole and disconnect a connector (photo on the below right) of the US Sensor Upper.



<Installing>

- 1) Follow the removing procedure in reverse.
Note: Insert the US Sensor Upper into the mounting hole (dotted circle in the photo on the right above) at a slant.
- 2) Check the sensor performance by Maintenance mode #1. (Refer to [Section 5-1-2](#).)

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	76/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

4-9-7 Removing / Installing the Sensor EM (for Empty detection)

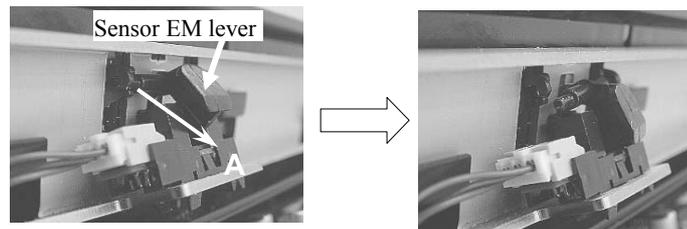
NOTICE

Conduct the procedure under dust-free environment.

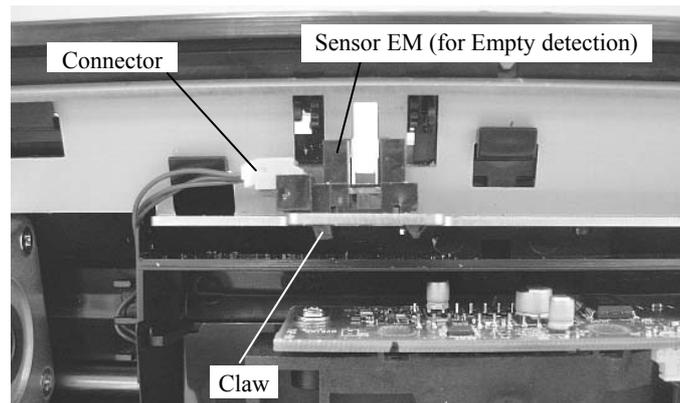
Refer to [Section 6-15](#) for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removing>

- 1) In case of the scanner with the Imprinter (option), remove the scanner from the Imprinter by referring to step (1) in [Section 4-7](#).
- 2) Remove the Panel PCA. (Refer to the steps (2) and (3) in [Section 4-9-1](#).)
- 3) Remove the Upper cover. (Refer to the step (3) in [Section 4-9-2](#).)
- 4) Pull left (connector side) of the shaft of the Sensor EM lever in A direction and remove the shaft. Remove right side of the shaft and remove the Sensor EM lever.



- 5) Remove the Sensor EM by releasing claws of the Sensor EM, and disconnect a connector from the Sensor EM.



<Installing>

- 1) Follow the removing procedure in reverse.
- 2) After mounting the Sensor EM, perform the offset adjustment ([Section 5-1-4](#)), and check the sensor performance ([Section 5-1-2](#)).

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	77/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

4-9-8 Removing / Installing the Upper ASSY

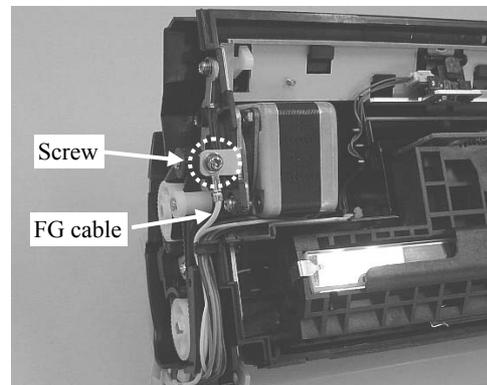
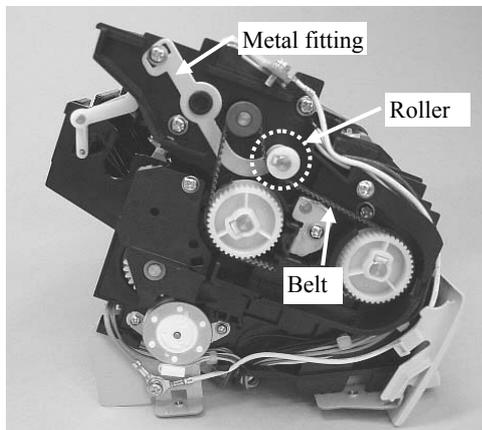
NOTICE

Conduct the procedure under dust-free environment.

Refer to [Section 6-12](#) for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removing>

- 1) In case of the scanner with the Imprinter (option), remove the scanner from the Imprinter by referring to step (1) in [Section 4-7](#).
- 2) Remove the PCB unit. (Refer to [Section 4-7](#).)
- 3) Remove the Rear Cover. (Refer to the steps (4) to (6) in [Section 4-8](#).)
- 4) Remove the Panel PCA. (Refer to the steps (2) and (3) in [Section 4-9-1](#).)
- 5) Remove the Upper Cover and Inverter. (Refer to steps (3) and (4) in [Section 4-9-2](#).)
- 6) Remove the ADF Motor. (Refer to the step (4) in [Section 4-9-3](#).) Remove the metal fitting, roller and belt used for adjusting belt tension (photo on the left below). Remove a screw that fixes the FG cable and take out the FG cable (photo on the right below).



- 7) Remove the Optical Unit. (Refer to the step (4) in [Section 4-9-4](#).)
- 8) Remove the Lamp. (Refer to the steps (5) and (6) in [Section 4-9-5](#).)
- 9) Remove the US Sensor Upper. (Refer to the steps (5) to (7) in [Section 4-9-6](#).)
- 10) Remove the Sensor EM. (Refer to steps (4) and (5) in [Section 4-9-7](#).)
- 11) Remove the Pad ASSY. (Refer to step (3) in [Section 1-7-2](#).)

➔The remaining unit is the Upper ASSY to be replaced.

<Installing>

- (1) If either side of the glass in the Upper Unit is dirty, clean it. Follow the removing procedure in reverse. Assembling should be taken under dust-free environment.
- (2) After mounting the Lamp, perform the offset adjustment ([Section 5-1-4](#)) and the magnification adjustment ([Section 5-1-3](#)) for ADF back scanning, and the white level adjustment ([Section 5-1-5](#)) for ADF front/back scanning.
- (3) Check the sensor performance as shown in [Section 5-1-2](#).

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	78/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

4-10 Removing/Installing the parts of the Base Unit

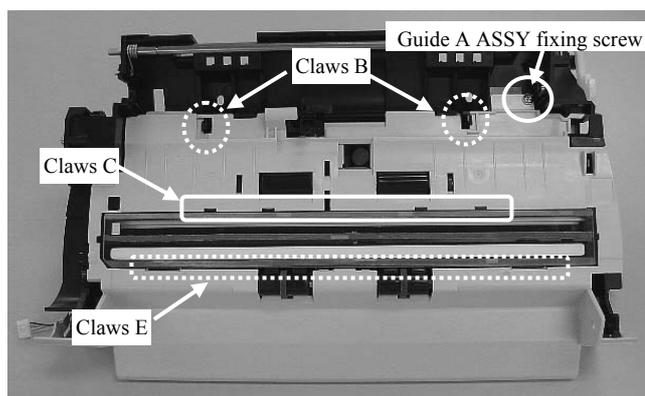
4-10-1 How to remove/install the Guide A ASSY

NOTICE

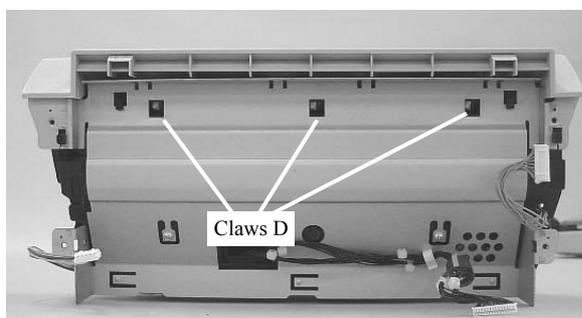
Refer to [Section 6-5](#) for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removing>

- 1) Remove the PCB Unit. (Refer to [Section 4-7](#).) (In case of the scanner with Imprinter (option), remove the Imprinter as well.)
- 2) Remove the Base Unit. (Refer to the steps (4) to (9) in [Section 4-8](#).)
- 3) Remove a Guide A ASSY fixing screw (one self-tapping screw, solid circle in the photo below). Detach (2) Claws B (dotted circle in the photo below), then (4) Claws C (solid square in the photo below).



- 4) Release (3) Claws D at the bottom of the Base Unit by sliding them to left. Then release (4) Claws E at the upper part of the Base Unit (dotted square in the photo above).



<Installing>

Follow the above procedure in reverse.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	79/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

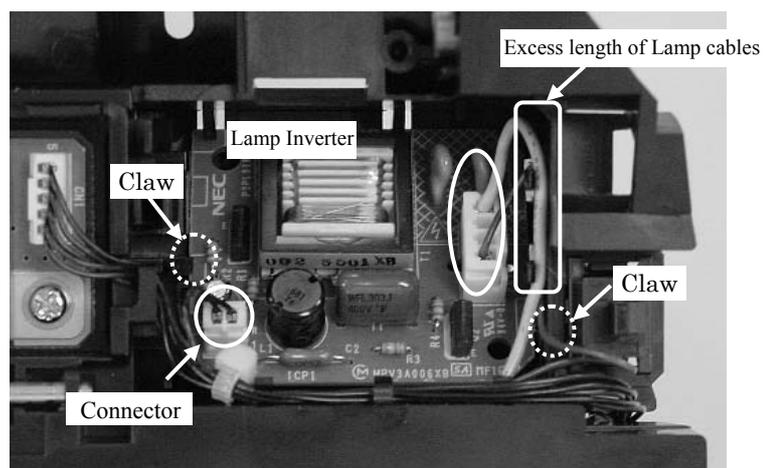
4-10-2 How to remove/install the Lamp Inverter (for front side scan)

NOTICE

Refer to [Section 6-2](#) for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removing>

- 1) Remove the PCB Unit. (Refer to [Section 4-7](#)) (In case of the scanner with Imprinter (option), remove the Imprinter as well.)
- 2) Remove the Base Unit. (Refer to the steps (4) to (9) in [Section 4-8](#).)
- 3) Remove the Guide A ASSY from the Base Unit. (Refer to the steps (3) and (4) in [Section 4-10-1](#).)
- 4) Disconnect (2) connectors (solid circle in the photo below). Detach (2) claws and remove the Lamp Inverter.



<Installing>

Follow the removing procedure in reverse. The excess length of (2) Lamp cables should be placed as shown above (solid square).

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	80/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

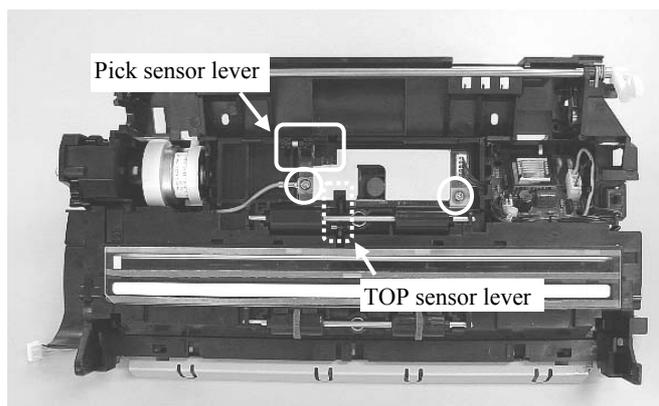
4-10-3 How to remove/install the US Sensor Lower

NOTICE

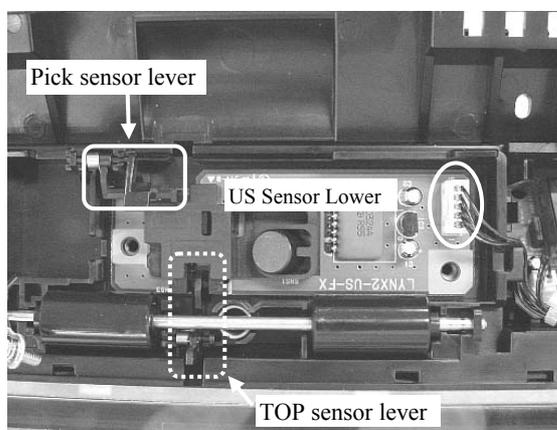
Refer to [Section 6-4](#) for the parts number of the replacement part.

<Removing>

- 1) Remove the PCB Unit. (Refer to [Section 4-7](#)) (In case of the scanner with Imprinter (option), remove the Imprinter as well.)
- 2) Remove the Base Unit. (Refer to the steps (4) to (9) in [Section 4-8](#).)
- 3) Remove the Guide A ASSY from the Base Unit. (Refer to steps (3) and (4) in [Section 4-10-1](#).)
- 4) Detach (2) screws (solid circle in the photo below) of the US Sensor Lower and remove the US Sensor Lower cover.



- 5) Disconnect a connector (solid circle in the photo below). Holding down the Pick sensor lever (solid square in the photo below) and TOP sensor lever (dotted square in the photo below) with a hand so that they do not touch the US Sensor Lower, remove the US Sensor Lower by lifting up its bottom edge (TOP sensor lever side).



<Installing>

- 1) Follow the removing procedure in reverse. Arrange (2) sensor cables as shown above.
- 2) After mounting, check the sensor performance. (Refer to [Section 5-1-2](#).)

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	81/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

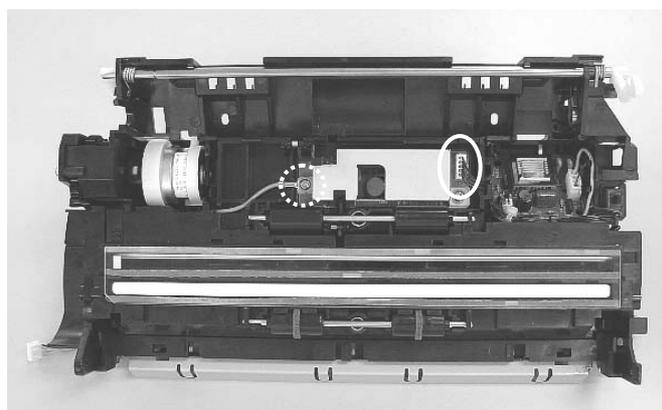
4-10-4 How to remove/install the Lamp (for ADF front)

NOTICE

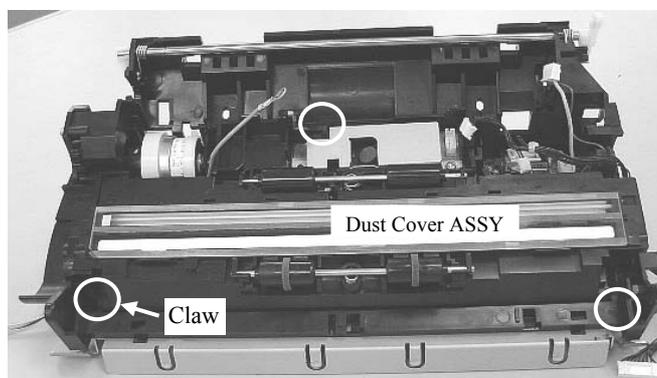
Conduct the procedure under dust-free environment.
 Refer to Section 6-3 for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removing>

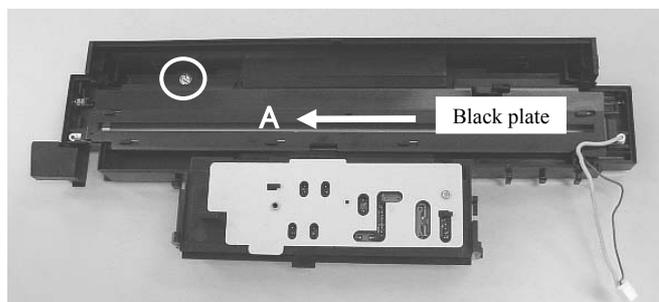
- 1) Remove the PCB Unit. (Refer to Section 4-7.) (In case of the scanner with Imprinter (option), remove the Imprinter as well.)
- 2) Remove the Base Unit. (Refer to steps (4) to (9) in Section 4-8.)
- 3) Remove the Guide A ASSY from the Base Unit. (Refer to steps (3) and (4) in Section 4-10-1.)
- 4) Disconnect (2) connectors. (Refer to step (4) in Section 4-10-2.)
- 5) Disconnect a connector (solid circle in the photo below) of the US Sensor Lower. Then remove a screw (dotted circle in the photo below) at the left side of the US Sensor Lower cover.



- 6) Detach (3) claws (circles in the photo below) of the Dust Cover ASSY and remove the Dust Cover ASSY.

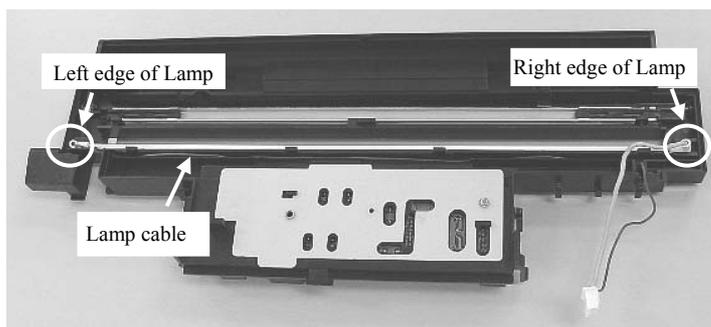


- 7) Remove a black plate fixing screw (circle in the photo below) and slide the black plate in A direction to remove it.



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	82/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

- 8) Remove both edges of the Lamp from the groove of the Dust Cover ASSY. Then detach the Lamp cable from the groove.



<Installing>

- (1) If the glass of the Dust Cover ASSY and inside of the reflector are dirty, clean them.
- (2) Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

[Installing Lamp and Black Plate]

1. Insert both edges of the Lamp into the groove of the Dust Cover ASSY.

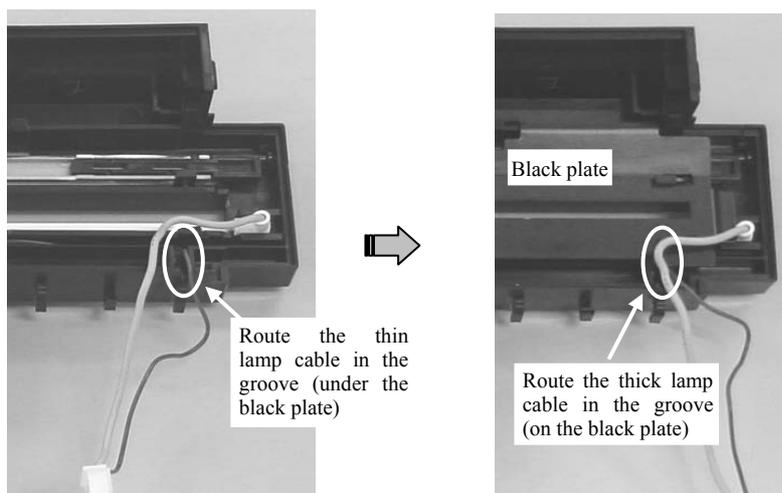
Note: Be sure that the mounting part of the Lamp cable faces up.

2. Insert the thin Lamp cable into the groove of the Dust Cover ASSY.

3. Attach the black plate to the Dust Cover ASSY.

Note: Be sure that the Lamp cable is routed as shown below.

When mounting the Dust Cover ASSY, be careful not to pinch the Lamp cable.



- (3) After mounting the Lamp, perform the following adjustment:

- Magnification adjustment ([Section 5-1-3](#))
- White level adjustment ([Section 5-1-5](#))
- Offset adjustment ([Section 5-1-4](#))

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	83/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

4-10-5 How to remove/install the Dust Cover ASSY

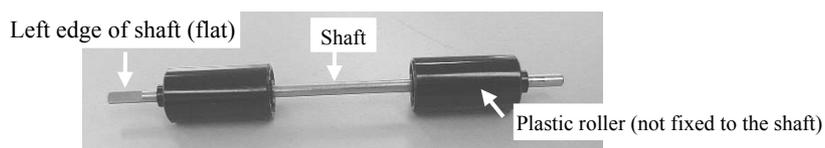
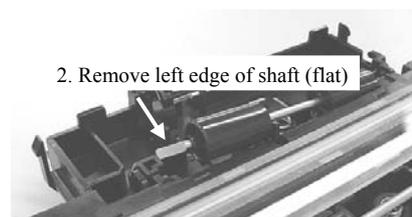
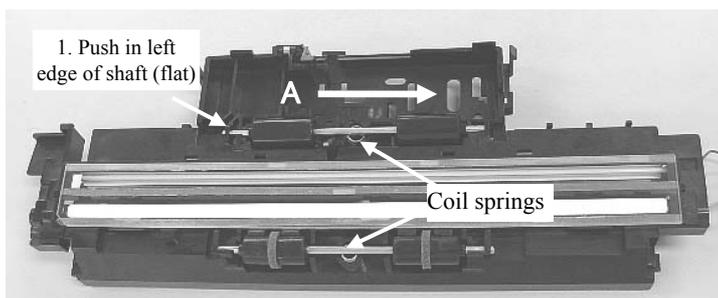
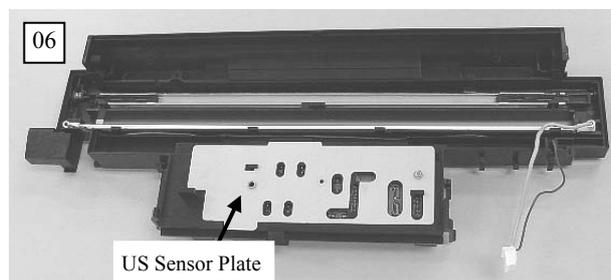
NOTICE

Conduct the procedure under dust-free environment.

Refer to [Section 6-6](#) for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removing>

- 1) Remove the PCB Unit. (Refer to [Section 4-7](#)) (In case of the scanner with Imprinter (option), remove the Imprinter as well.)
- 2) Remove the Base Unit. (Refer to steps (4) to (9) in [Section 4-8](#).)
- 3) Remove the Guide A ASSY from the Base Unit. (Refer to steps (3) and (4) in [Section 4-10-1](#).)
- 4) Disconnect (2) connectors. (Refer to step (4) in [Section 4-10-2](#).)
- 5) Remove the US Sensor Lower cover and the US Sensor Lower. (Refer to steps (4) and (5) in [Section 4-10-3](#).) 06
- 6) Remove the Dust Cover ASSY, the black plate and the Lamp. (Refer to steps (6) and (8) in [Section 4-10-4](#).)
- 7) Remove the US sensor plate. 06
- 8) Slide the left edge of the plastic roller shaft in A direction and remove the shaft. Remove the plastic roller shaft with sponge as well.
- 9) Remove two coil springs for the plastic rollers. 06

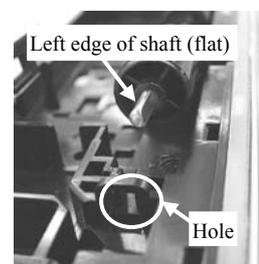


<Installing>

If either side of the glass in the Dust Cover ASSY is dirty, clean it. Assembling should be taken under dust-free environment. Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

[Installing Plastic roller shaft]

1. Insert the right edge of the shaft into the Dust Cover ASSY hole.
2. Insert the left edge (flat) by fitting to the Dust Cover ASSY hole (photo on the right).



[Installing Lamp and Black plate]

Refer to [Section 4-10-4](#).

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	84/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

4-10-6 How to remove/install the Optical Unit (for ADF front)

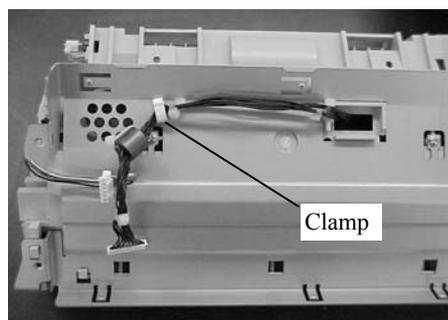
NOTICE

Conduct the procedure under dust-free environment.

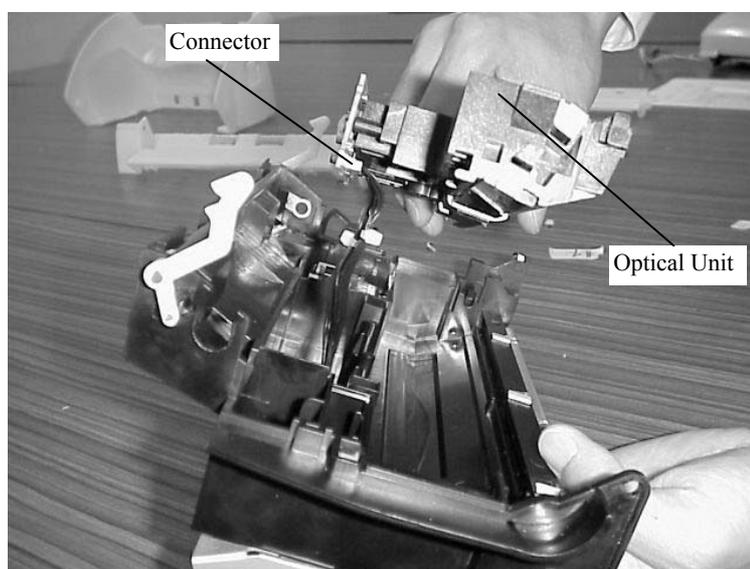
Refer to [Section 6-7](#) for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removing>

- 1) Remove the PCB Unit. (Refer to [Section 4-7](#).) (In case of the scanner with Imprinter (option), remove the Imprinter as well.)
- 2) Remove the Base Unit. (Refer to steps (4) to (9) in [Section 4-8](#).)
- 3) Remove the Guide A ASSY. (Refer to steps (3) and (4) in [Section 4-10-1](#).)
- 4) Disconnect (2) connectors. (Refer to step (4) in [Section 4-10-2](#).)
- 5) Remove the Dust Cover ASSY. (Refer to steps (4) and (5) in [Section 4-10-4](#).)
- 6) Remove the cable from the cable clamp attached to the bottom of the Base Unit.



- 7) Raise the Optical Unit and disconnect a connector to remove the Optical Unit.



<Installing>

- 1) Clean the mirror inside the Optical Unit using a blower brush or a dry cloth if it is dirty. Do not use alcohol as it may stain the mirror.
- 2) Follow the removing procedure in reverse.
- 3) After mounting the Optical Unit, perform the following adjustment:
 - Magnification adjustment ([Section 5-1-3](#))
 - Offset adjustment ([Section 5-1-4](#))
 - White level adjustment ([Section 5-1-5](#))

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	85/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

4-10-7 How to remove/install the BW Motor

NOTICE

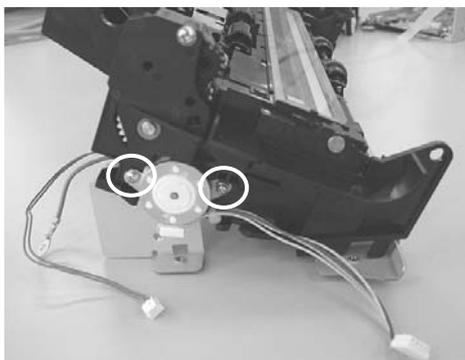
Conduct the procedure under dust-free environment.

Refer to [Section 6-8](#) for the part number of the replacement part.

A small Philips screwdriver (for M2.5) is required for replacing this part.

<Removing>

- (1) Remove the PCB Unit. (Refer to [Section 4-7](#)) (In case of the scanner with Imprinter (option), remove the Imprinter as well.)
- (2) Remove the Base Unit. (Refer to steps (4) ~ (9) in [Section 4-8](#).)
- (3) Remove the Guide A ASSY from the Base Unit. (Refer to steps (3) and (4) in [Section 4-10-1](#).)
- (4) Remove small (2) BW motor screws, and remove the BW Motor.



<Installing>

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	86/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

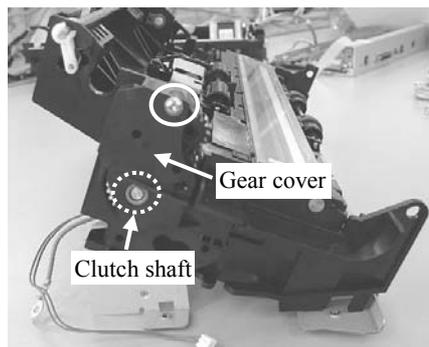
4-10-8 How to remove/install the Clutch

NOTICE

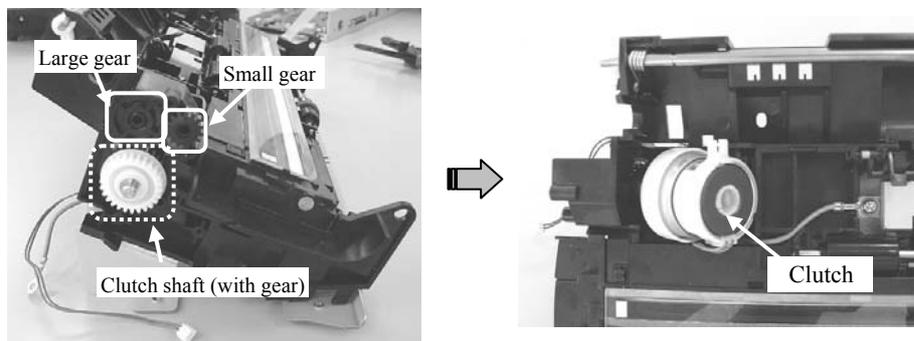
Refer to [Section 6-9](#) for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removing>

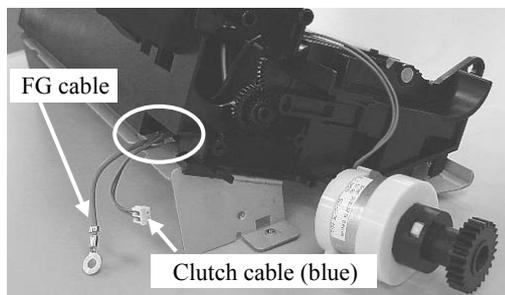
- (1) Remove the PCB Unit. (Refer to [Section 4-7.](#)) (In case of the scanner with Imprinter (option), remove the Imprinter as well.)
- (2) Remove the Base Unit. (Refer to steps (4) ~ (9) in [Section 4-8.](#))
- (3) Remove the Guide A ASSY from the Base Unit (Refer to steps (3) and (4) in [Section 4-10-1.](#))
- (4) Remove the BW motor. (Refer to step (4) in [Section 4-10-7.](#))
- (5) Remove a gear cover screw (solid circle in the photo below), and remove the gear cover.



- (6) Remove (2) gears (large and small, solid square in the photo on the left below). Pull out the Clutch shaft (with gear, dotted square in the photo on the left below). Lift up the Clutch (photo on the right below) diagonally toward right and pull the Clutch out of the Base Unit hole.



- (7) Pull the connector of the Clutch cable (blue) out of the hole (circle in the photo below) on the bottom of the Base Unit.

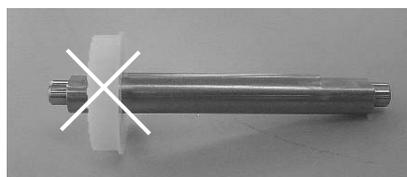
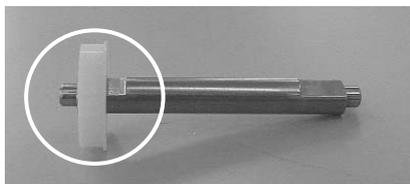


Note: To pull out the connector of the Clutch cable (blue) easily, pull out the FG cable of the US Sensor Lower first.

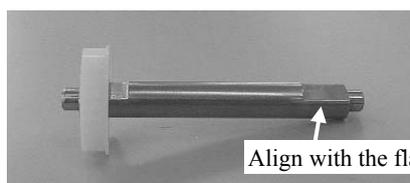
05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	87/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

<Installing>

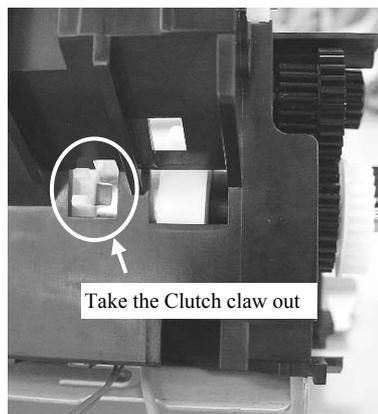
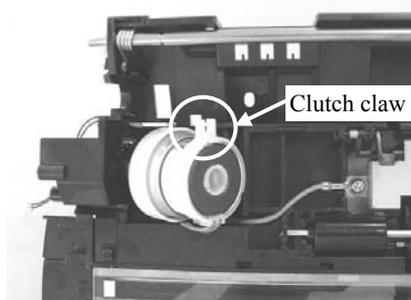
- (1) Follow the removing procedure in reverse.
- (2) Pay attention to the following points.
 1. Attach the gear at the left edge of the flat part of the Clutch shaft (with gear)



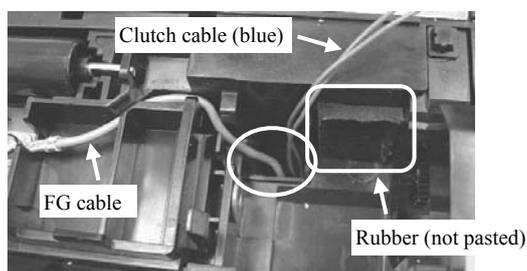
2. Align the Clutch shaft (with gear) with the flat part of the Clutch hole.



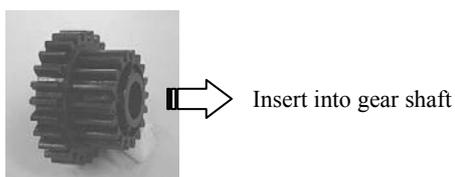
3. Take the Clutch claw out of the Base Unit hole.



Note: To let the connector of the Clutch cable (blue) into the hole under the Clutch (circle in the photo below) easily, pull out the FG cable of the US Sensor Lower first.



4. Insert the large gear into the gear shaft as shown in the photo below, and push it until its tip bumps the bottom.



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	88/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

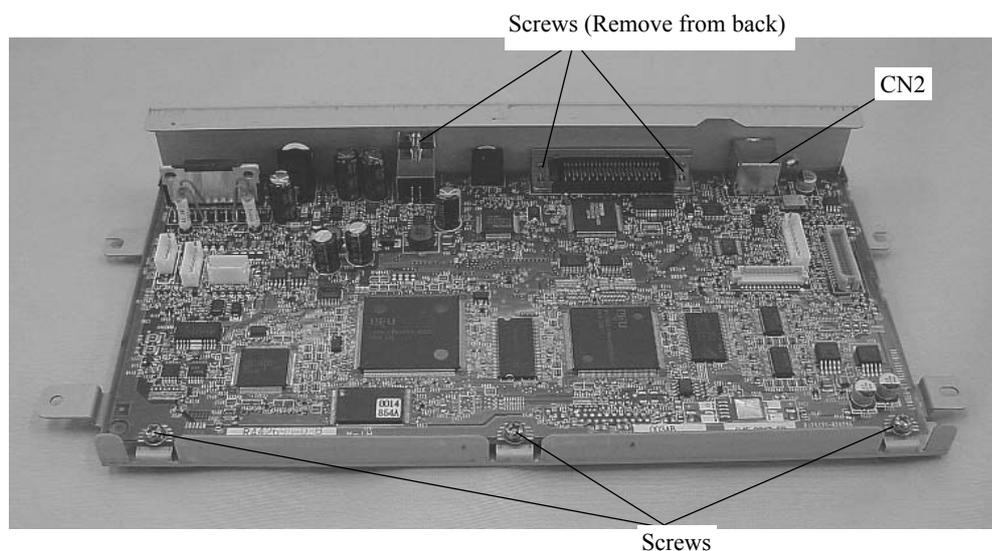
4-11 Removing/Installing the Control PCA

NOTICE

Refer to [Section 6-17](#) for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removing>

- 1) Remove the PCB Unit. (Refer to [Section 4-7](#).) (In case of the scanner with Imprinter (option), remove the Imprinter as well.)
- 2) Remove 3 screws that fix the Control PCA and 3 screws that fix the connectors to take out the Control PCA.



<Installing>

Follow the removing procedure in reverse.

When connecting the connectors, align and gently insert the cable to avoid bending connector pins.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL							
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	Rev		DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada			

Chapter 5 Adjustment/Settings

5-1 Maintenance mode

The scanner supports built-in Maintenance mode that allows users to check scanner's performance and settings. This section gives the description of Maintenance mode.

5-1-1 Activating the Maintenance mode

(1) How to activate the Maintenance mode

Open the ADF cover and press the power button once while holding down the **SCAN** button. Keep holding the **SCAN** button down until Screen T04 is displayed. This will put the scanner into Maintenance mode. While in Maintenance mode, the scanner interface is off-line.

The following display appears during power up processing in Maintenance mode.

Screen T01

Function No. Display	Power LED	Scanner status
	ON	Initial processing in Maintenance mode

When Maintenance mode is activated normally after the initial processing, the following display appears.

Screen T04

Function No. Display	Power LED	Scanner status
	ON	Maintenance mode #1 selected

(2) Test/adjustment items of the Maintenance mode

The following lists test/adjustment items #1 ~ #7 that are supported by the scanner.

Mode 1: Paper transportation / Sensor / Background changeover test

Mode 2: Main scanning/Sub-scanning magnification adjustment

Mode 3: Offset adjustment

Mode 4: White level adjustment

Mode 5: Consumables counter display and reset

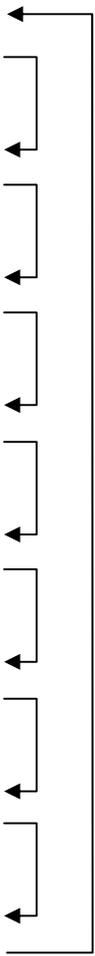
Mode 6: Miscellaneous information display

Mode 7: EEPROM data restore

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	90/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

(3) Changing Maintenance mode

To change Maintenance modes (#1 ~ #7), press the **Function** button on the activation screen for Maintenance mode. The display changes as follows. Mode #1 is the default mode.

Maintenance mode No.	Display			Maintenance mode	Related section
	Function No. Display	Power LED	Status transition		
#1		ON		Paper transportation / Sensor / Background changeover test	5-1-2
#2		ON		Main-scanning/ Sub-scanning magnification adjustment	5-1-3
#3		ON		Offset adjustment	5-1-4
#4		ON		White level adjustment	5-1-5
#5		ON		Consumables counter display and reset	5-1-6
#6		ON		Miscellaneous information display	5-1-7
#7		ON		EEPROM data restore	5-1-8
#8		ON		(Reserved) Press Function button to return to #1.	

(4) Starting the Maintenance mode

Select one Maintenance mode and press **Scan**. The scanner activates the selected Maintenance mode.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	91/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

5-1-2 Maintenance mode #1: Paper feeding / Sensor / Background changeover test

This mode tests the ADF/FB paper feeding operation at the specified speed, checks each sensor status (ON/OFF) of the ADF sensors, and tests background changeover.

[How to start]

- (1) From screen T04, press the **Function** (Δ or ∇) button to select  (Maintenance mode #1) and press the **Scan** button. The selection screen for scanning speed/sensor/Background changeover test appears. A number is shown on the Function No. Display indicating the selected scanning speed or test mode as follows.

Function No. Display	Scanning speed/test mode	Remarks
0	Monochrome 400 dpi	Default
1	Monochrome 300 dpi	
2	Monochrome 240 dpi	
3	Monochrome 200 dpi	
4	Monochrome 100 dpi	
5	Monochrome 150 dpi	
6	Monochrome 600 dpi	
7	Sensor test	
8	Background changeover test	

<Paper feeding test>

- (2) Select a scanning speed from 0 to 6 (this varies depending on the scanning resolution) from 0 ~ 6 by pressing the **Function** button.

When the Imprinter option is NOT connected:

- (3) To test the continuous feeding operation, press the **Scan** button. The ADF operation is started if any paper on the ADF paper chute (Chute unit) (Hopper empty sensor = Sensor EM ON).

To test the one-sheet feeding operation, while pressing the **Send to** button, press the **Scan** button, which switches to the one-sheet feeding operation mode. Then let go of the **Send to** button, then the **Scan** button in order. The ADF operation is started if any paper on the ADF paper chute (Chute unit) (Hopper empty sensor = Sensor EM ON).

When the Imprinter option is connected:

- (3) To test the continuous feeding operation, press the **Scan** button. The function number display requires selecting whether imprinting is necessary or not.

To test the one-sheet feeding operation, while pressing the **Send to** button, press the **Scan** button, which switches to the one-sheet feeding operation mode. Then let go of the **Send to** button, then the **Scan** button in order. The function number display requires selecting whether imprinting is necessary or not.

Function number display	Mode	Remarks
—	NO imprinting	Default (Screen T11)
P	Imprinting	Screen T12

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	92/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

- (4) Select whether imprinting is necessary or not by pressing the **Function** button.

Screen T11

Function No. display	Scanner status
	“-” lights without blinking. NO imprinting (default)

Screen T12

Function No. display	Scanner status
	“P” lights without blinking. Imprinting

<Available buttons at Screen T11 and T12>

Function button: Switches between Screens T11 and T12 every press.

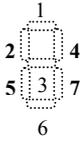
Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to Screen T04.

- (5) Press the **Scan** button. The ADF operation is started if any paper on the ADF paper chute (Chute unit) (Hopper empty sensor = Sensor EM ON).

<Sensor test>

- (2) By pressing the **Scan** button while “7” is shown on the display, the scanner enters Sensor test mode.

The following table shows how the sensor status is displayed while the sensor test is in progress.

Function No. Display	Description *2	Display
	1: indicates Imprinter document detection sensor (Sensor) status	Illuminates when the sensor is ON (Paper is detected)
	2: indicates Hopper empty sensor status	Illuminates when the sensor is ON (Paper is loaded on the ADF chute)
	3: indicates PICK sensor status	Illuminates when the sensor is ON (Paper is detected)
	4: indicates TOP sensor status	Illuminates when the sensor is ON (Paper is detected)
	5: indicates Cover Open Sensor status	Illuminates when the sensor is OFF (Cover is open) *1
	6: indicates Imprinter printing section status (open/close)	Illuminates when the sensor is OFF (Printing section is open)
	7: indicates Multi feed sensor (US Sensor) status	Illuminates when the sensor is ON (Paper is detected) *2

*1: This sensor test should be conducted by opening/closing the ADF cover. If the Cover open sensor is pressed by anything while the ADF cover is open, the Multi feed sensor (US Sensor) turns ON, causing position “7” to light as well.

*2: The confirmation of US sensor is available only when the document is fed by pressing the **Function** button as described below. You cannot confirm US sensor by just inserting document (no feeding) between US sensors.

During the sensor test, you can check the sensor status (ON/OFF) when the document passes through the ADF by the following procedure:

1. Press the **Function** button. The ADF Motor starts to rotate.
2. Set the document into the ADF paper chute (Chute unit).

<Background changeover test>

- (2) By pressing the **Scan** button while “8” is shown on the display, the scanner starts Background changeover test.

The testing is confirmed by opening the ADF.

[How to end]

Press the **Send to** button. The test stops and the Maintenance mode selection Screen T04 appears. The ADF continuous feeding operation is also terminated when no more paper on the ADF paper chute (Chute unit).

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	93/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

5-1-3 Maintenance mode #2: Main scanning / Sub-scanning magnification adjustment

In this mode, the magnification correction values for main/sub scanning are automatically calculated to satisfy the following adjustment value.

Adjustment value

Main scanning: Within $\pm 1.0\%$

Sub scanning: Within $\pm 1.0\%$ (Without stop and start during scanning)

: Within $\pm 2.0\%$ (With stop and start during scanning)

NOTICE

Before this adjustment, please prepare the Test sheet described in Figure 5-1-3.

If Main-scanning magnification (ADF front or back) is adjusted, then run Offset adjustment (ADF front or back) described in Section 5-1-4.

[How to start]

- (1) From screen T04, Press the **Function** (Δ or ∇) button to select  (Maintenance mode #2) and press the **Scan** button. A number is shown on the Function No. Display indicating the magnification to be adjusted as follows:

Function No. Display	Magnification to be adjusted	Remarks
0	ADF sub- scanning magnification adjustment	Default
1	ADF main scanning magnification adjustment (front)	
2	ADF main scanning magnification adjustment (back)	

- (2) Select the magnification you want to change by pressing **Function** button.

- (3) Set the Test sheet on the ADF paper chute (Chute Unit), and adjust the side guide to the width of the test sheet.

Press **Scan** button to start the adjustment.

[How to end]

Press **Send to** button during operation. The operation stops and the Maintenance mode selection screen (T04) appears.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	94/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

[Display after adjustment]

After the magnification adjustment, the following display appears depending on its terminated status.

(1) When the magnification adjustment is terminated normally

Screen T21

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	Displays "o" without blinking.

<Available buttons at screen T21>

Function button: Displays screen T22 to write the correction value into EEPROM.

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

Screen T22

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	"o" (lower half) blinks.

<Available buttons at screen T22>

Scan + **Function** button: Starts writing the magnification correction value into EEPROM. During writing operation, screen T23 displayed, and when it finishes, screen T24 appears.

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

Screen T23

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	"L" lights without blinking.

Note: While screen T23 is displayed, no button can function.

Screen T24

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	"o" (upper half) lights without blinking.

<Available buttons at screen T24>

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	95/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

(2) When the magnification adjustment is terminated abnormally

Screen T25

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	Displays "c" without blinking.

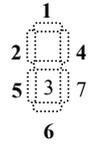
Note: The major reason of abnormal termination is incorrect setting of the test sheet. Set the test sheet correctly and try the magnification adjustment again.

<Available buttons at screen T25>

Function button: Displays error information (screen T26)

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

Screen T26

Function No. Display	Description	Adjustment mode (*1)		Countermeasure when abnormal termination frequently occurs
		0	1,2	
	1: cannot detect the leading edge of the document	√		Conduct necessary operation by referring to step (2) and later in Section 3-3-10 .
	2: cannot detect the left edge of the document		√	
	4: cannot detect the right edge of the document		√	
	5: Excessive skew A		√	
	6: cannot detect the trailing edge of the document	√		
	7: Excessive skew B		√	

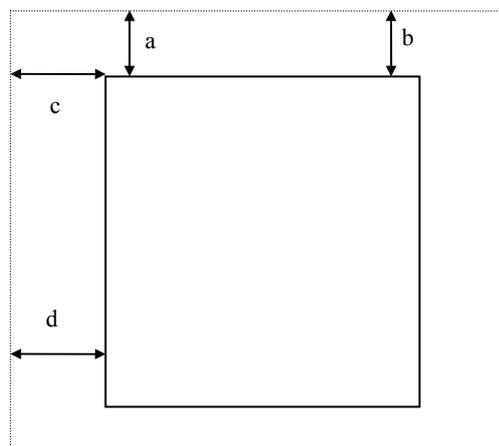
(*1) 0 : ADF sub scanning magnification adjustment

1,2: ADF front/back main scanning magnification adjustment

Skew A and B are calculated as follows:

$$\text{Skew A} = a - b$$

$$\text{Skew B} = c - d$$



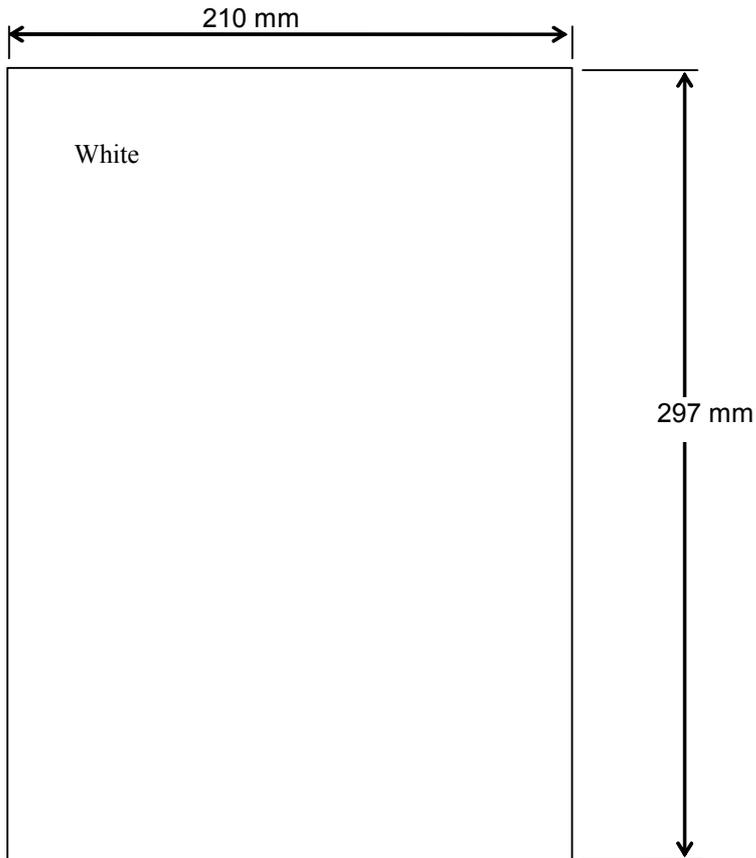
<Available button at screen T26>

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	96/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

[Test sheet]

Use the test sheet for the magnification/offset adjustment that meets the following specification.



Use Normal A4 office paper.
(White level adjustment sheet can also be used.)

Figure 5-1-3 Test sheet for the magnification/offset adjustment

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6	
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	97/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

5-1-4 Maintenance mode #3: Offset adjustment

In this mode, the offset correction values for main/sub scanning are automatically calculated to satisfy the following offset values:

Offset value

Main scanning: The largest offset of A6 or larger size of document shall be: ± 24 dot

Sub-scanning: The largest offset of A6 or larger size of document shall be: ± 33 dot

NOTICE

Before this adjustment, please prepare the Test sheet described in Figure 5-1-3.

Also, before adjusting offset (ADF front or back), run Main-scanning magnification adjustment (ADF front or back) by referring to [Section 5-1-3](#).

[How to start]

- (1) From screen t04, Press the **Function** (\triangle or ∇) button to select  (Maintenance mode #3) and press the **Scan** button. A number is shown on the Function No. Display indicating the location of the offset to be adjusted.

Function No. Display	Offset to be adjusted	Remarks
0	ADF front	Default
1	ADF back	

- (2) Change the selection by pressing **Function** button.

- (3) Set the test sheet (see Figure 5-1-3) on the ADF paper chute (Chute Unit), and adjust the side guide to the width of the test sheet.

Press **Scan** button to start the adjustment operation.

[How to end]

Press **Send to** button during operation. The operation stops and the Maintenance mode selection screen (T04) appears.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Oakada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	98/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

[Display after adjustment]

After the offset adjustment, the following display appears depending on its terminated status.

(1) When the offset adjustment is terminated normally

Screen T31

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	Displays "o" without blinking. The adjustment has terminated normally.

<Available buttons at screen T31>

Function button: Displays screen T32 to write the correction value into EEPROM.

Send to button: Terminates this mode and return to screen T04.

Screen T32

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	"o" (lower half) blinks. Confirming whether the correction value shall be written in EEPROM or not.

<Available buttons at screen T32>

Scan + **Function** button: Start writing the offset correction value into EEPROM. During writing operation, screen T33 displayed, and when it finishes, screen T34 appears.

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

Screen T33

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	"L" lights without blinking. Correction value is being written in EEPROM.

Note: While screen T33 is displayed, no button can function.

Screen T34

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	"o" (upper half) lights without blinking. The value has been written normally.

<Available buttons at screen T34>

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	99/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

(2) When the offset adjustment is terminated abnormally
Screen T35

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	Displays "c" without blinking. The adjustment has terminated abnormally.

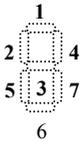
Note: The major reason of abnormal termination is incorrect setting of the test sheet. Set the test sheet correctly and try the magnification adjustment again.

<Available buttons at screen T35>

Function button: Displays error information (screen T36)

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

Screen T36

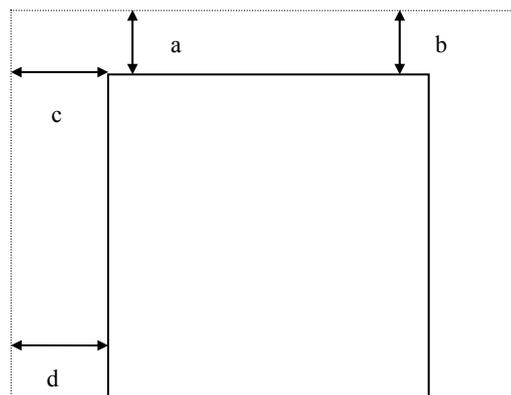
Function No. Display	Description	Adjustment mode (*1)		Countermeasure when abnormal termination frequently occurs
		0	1,2	
	1: cannot detect the leading edge of the document (black detection failed)	√	√	Conduct necessary operation by referring to step (2) and later in Section 3-3-9 .
	2: cannot detect the left edge of the document (black detection failed)	√	√	
	3: cannot detect the leading edge of the document (white detection failed)	√	√	
	4: Excessive skew A	√	√	
	5: cannot detect the left edge of the document (white detection failed)	√	√	
	6: Excessive skew B	√	√	
	7: Excessive skew B	√	√	

(*1) 0: ADF front
1,2: ADF back

Skew A and B are calculated by the following expression.

$$\text{Skew A} = a - b$$

$$\text{Skew B} = c - d$$



<Available buttons at screen T36>

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

[Test sheet]

Use the same sheet as used for the magnification adjustment. See [Section 5-1-3](#).

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	100/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

5-1-5 Maintenance mode #4: White level adjustment

In this mode, the white level correction values for main/sub scanning are automatically adjusted.

NOTICE

Before this adjustment, please prepare the Test sheet described in Section 4-4.

[How to start]

- (1) From screen T04, press the **Function** (Δ or ∇) button to select **E** (Maintenance mode #4) and press the **Scan** button. A number is shown on the Function No. Display indicating the location of the white level to be adjusted.

Function No. Display	White level to be adjusted	Remarks
0	ADF front	Default
1	ADF back	

- (2) Change the selection by pressing **Function** button.
- (3) Set the adjustment test sheet on the ADF paper chute (Chute Unit) and adjust the side guide to the width of the test sheet. Either side of the adjustment test sheet can be used. Press **Scan** button to start the adjustment operation.

Note: The adjustment starts approx. 10 seconds after pressing **Scan** button to make the light intensity becomes stable.

[How to end]

Press **Send to** button during operation. The operation stops and the Maintenance mode selection screen (T04) appears.

Note: After reading the white level adjustment sheet, it takes approx. 10 seconds for the scanner to calculate the level adjustment and close adjustment.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	101/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

[Display after adjustment]

After the white level adjustment, the following display appears depending on its terminated status.

(1) When the white level adjustment is terminated normally

Screen T41

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	Displays "o" without blinking. The adjustment has terminated normally.

<Available buttons at screen T41>

Function button: Displays screen T42 to write the correction value into EEPROM.

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

Screen T42

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	"o" (lower half) blinks. Confirming whether the correction value shall be written in EEPROM or not.

<Available buttons at screen T42>

Scan + **Function** button: Start writing the white level correction value into EEPROM. During writing operation, screen T43 displayed, and when it finishes, screen T44 appears

Send to button : Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

Screen T43

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	"L" lights without blinking. Correction value is being written in EEPROM.

Note: While screen T43 is displayed, no button can function.

Screen T44

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	"o" (upper half) lights without blinking. The value has written normally.

<Available buttons at screen T44>

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	102/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

(2) When the white level adjustment is terminated abnormally

Screen T45

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	Displays "c". The adjustment has terminated abnormally.

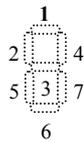
Note: The major reason of abnormal termination is incorrect setting of the test sheet. Set the test sheet correctly and try the magnification adjustment again.

<Available buttons at screen T45>

Function button: Displays error information (screen T46)

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

Screen T46

Function No. Display	Description	Countermeasure when abnormal termination frequently occurs
	1: media error The tested sheet may not be a specified one. Please confirm the test sheet is good.	It seems Lamp or Optical Unit is faulty. Replace defective parts.

<Available buttons at screen T46>

Send to button: Terminates this mode and return to screen T04.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Oakada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	103/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

5-1-6 Maintenance mode #5: Consumable counter display and reset

In this mode, the following consumable counter is displayed and reset:

- Pick counter (Abrasion counter for Pick roller)
- Pad counter (Abrasion counter for Pad ASY)
- Remaining amount of ink dot
- Imprinter consumables (Abrasion counter for Print head)

[How to operate]

- (1) From screen T04, press the **Function** (Δ or ∇) button to select  (Maintenance mode #5) and press the **Scan** button. A number is shown on the Function No. Display indicating the counters as follows.

Function No. Display	White level to be adjusted	Remarks
0	Pick counter (Abrasion counter for Pick roller)	Default
1	Pad counter (Abrasion counter for Pad ASY)	
2	(Reserved)	
3	Remaining amount of ink dot	Displayed only when the Imprinter is installed.
4	Imprinter consumables (Abrasion counter for Print head)	

- (2) Change the selection by pressing **Function** button.
- (3) The counter is displayed as follows when pressing **Scan** button.

Counter	Display
Pick counter (Abrasion counter for Pick roller)	The counter displays 8 digits in total, 1 number at a time, from left digit to right digit. (If the counter has not reached 8 digits yet, 0 is added to blank digits.) The symbol “-” is displayed before the first number, indicating the counter display starts. The counter displays “0” until it reaches 500, and increases in 10 increments after 500. eg. When the counter is “16,245”, “-00016245” is displayed in the following order: “-” → “0” → “0” → “0” → “1” → “6” → “2” → “4” → “0”
Pad counter (Abrasion counter for Pad ASY)	See above
Remaining amount of ink dot	The counter displays 3 digits between 100 to 0 in percentage (%). 100% is the initial status. Displayed remaining amount of ink is just a target as it depends on the condition in which it is used. eg.: When the remaining amount is 58% “-” → “0” → “5” → “8” “-“ indicates a starting mark.
Imprinter consumables (Abrasion counter for Print head)	See “Pick counter” above.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	104/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

(4) The following buttons are available during counter display.

Function button: Displays screen T51 to reset the counter.

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

Screen T51

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	“o” (lower half) blinks. Confirming whether the counter shall be reset or not.

<Available buttons at screen T51>

Scan + **Function** button: Starts resetting the displayed counter value to 0. During writing operation, screen T52 displayed, and when it finishes, screen T53 appears.

Note: After reset, the counter value below 500 remains without being reset and that value will be the initial value of the internal counter, but this is not an error.

eg.) When “52,168” is reset, 168 remains and the internal counter will start counting from 168, while Function No. Display shows 0.

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

Screen T52

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	“L” lights without blinking. The counter is being reset.

Note: While screen T52 is displayed, no button can function.

Screen T53

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	“o” (upper half) lights without blinking. Counter reset has done.

<Available buttons at screen T53>

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	105/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

5-1-7 Maintenance mode #6: Miscellaneous information display

In this mode, the following information counter is displayed:

- Firmware version number
- Starting date of the scanner *
- The accumulated number of paper that have been scanned by ADF

* : This indicates the date when the scanner is activated by the driver first. This information is only available if the driver supports this function.

[How to start]

(1) Selects Maintenance mode #6 in screen T04 and press **Scan** button. A number appears on the Function No. Display indicating the information.

Function No. Display	Display	Remarks
0	Firmware version	Default
1	Starting date of the scanner	
2	The accumulated number of paper scanned by ADF	

(2) Change the selection by pressing **Function** button.

(3) The information is displayed as follows when pressing **Scan** button.

Information	Display
Firmware version number	<p>The firmware version number is displayed in 4 digits from left digits to right digits, following the symbol “-”.</p> <p>Without Imprinter installed (example): eg. When the scanner version is “A00” (*1), “A” is converted to “01” (*2), so the scanner displays “-0100” in the following order: “-” → “0” → “1” → “0” → “0” “A” is converted to “01” (*2)</p> <p>With Imprinter installed (example): eg. When the scanner version is “B00” and the Imprinter version is “A00” (*1), “P” and the Imprinter version is indicated after the scanner version. But the Imprinter version will not be indicated if the scanner version is J00 or younger. “-” → “0” → “2” → “0” → “0” → “P” → “0” → “1” → “0” → “0” Imprinter firmware version</p>
Starting date	<p>Starting date of the scanner is displayed in 6 digits, 2 digits for “Year (Christian calendar)”, 2 digits for “Month”, and 2 digits for “Date”, following the symbol “-”. You cannot reset the date.</p> <p>eg. When the starting date is January 31st, 2002, “020131” is displayed in the following order: “-” → “0” → “2” → 0 → “1” → “3” → “1”</p>
The accumulated number of paper scanned by ADF	<p>The accumulated number of paper scanned by ADF is displayed in 8 digits from left digits to right digits, following the symbol “-”. (If the counter does not reach 8 digits, 0 is added to blank digits.) The counter displays “0” until it reaches 500, and increases in 10 increments after 500. You cannot reset this counter.</p> <p>eg. When the accumulated number is “16,245”, “00016240” is displayed in the following order: “-” → “0” → “0” → “0” → “1” → “6” → “2” → “4” → “0”</p>

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	106/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

*1: The firmware version is normally expressed by an alphabet, such as A, B or C. However, if the firmware is a beta version, two digits are added after alphabet character, such as A01, A02 or A03. So the firmware version like A00, B00 or C00 means this is an official version.

*2: As 8 segment display cannot display alphabet, alphabet is expressed by two digits as follows:

A	B	C	-----	J	K	L
01	02	03	-----	10	11	12

[How to end]

Press **Send to** button. The display returns to screen T04.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6	
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	107/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

5-1-8 Maintenance mode #7: EEPROM data restore

When replacing the Panel PCA, the EEPROM data on the Panel PCA shall be moved to the flash memory of the Control PCA. In this mode, the data is restored from the Control PCA to the Panel PCA.

[How to start]

(1) Selects Maintenance mode #7 in screen T04 and press **Scan** button. The following display appears.

Screen T71

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	“o” (lower half) blinks. Confirming whether the data shall be restored or not.

<Available buttons at screen T71>

Scan + **Function** button: Returns the data from the Control PCA to the EEPROM on the Panel PCA. During restoring operation, screen T72 is displayed.

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

Screen T72

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	“L” lights without blinking. The data is being restored.

Note: While screen T72 is displayed, no button can function.

[Display of the result]

(1) When the data restore terminated normally, the following display appears.

Screen T73

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	Displays “o” (upper half) without blinking. The data has restored normally.

<Available buttons at screen T73>

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	108/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

(2) When no data exists in the Control PCA, the following display appears.

Screen T74

Function No. Display	Scanner status
	Displays "c" without blinking. No data exists in the Control PCA.

<Available buttons at screen T74>

Send to button: Terminates this mode and returns to screen T04.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	109/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

5-2 Saving EEPROM data

The EEPROM data on the Panel PCA can be saved on the flash memory of the Control PCA. This operation is needed before replacing the Panel PCA. Since this operation is taken when the Panel PCA is malfunctioning, save data by following the procedure below without using the operator panel.

NOTICE

- Do not conduct this procedure unless the Panel PCA is malfunctioning.
- The Panel PCA from which the data was saved to the Control PCA cannot be used again.
- Make sure to prepare a new Panel PCA before saving the EEPROM data.

[How to save EEPROM data on the Control PCA]

1. Open the ADF. While pressing the TOP sensor lever and lifting up the Hopper empty sensor lever, power on the scanner. "P" → "H" are displayed.
2. Leave your fingers from TOP sensor and Hopper empty sensor lever. Then press TOP sensor lever two times, so that the time interval between pressing and removing is more than 1 second.
3. Close the ADF. "L" is displayed when the Function No. Display is working normally.
4. After more than 5 seconds elapse, open the ADF.

When the EEPROM data is successfully saved, the Lamp of ADF front blinks 3 times and "o" (upper half) is displayed on the Function No. Display.

In case that the EEPROM data is not successfully saved, the Lamp does not blink and "c" is displayed on the Function No. Display.

NOTICE

If EEPROM data is saved successfully, scanner writes some information on the Panel PCA which disables the usage of the Panel PCA. So this Panel PCA cannot be used. The replacement of the Panel PCA is required. If the Panel PCA is not replaced, "E6" always appear on the panel at power on.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	110/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

5-3 Emulation mode

The scanner can scan the documents with the emulation mode of following scanners.

- fi-4120C
- fi-4120C2

(1) How to activate Emulation mode

Open the cover. Then, press **Power** button while pressing **Function** button. Keep pressing **Function** button until scanner shows Screen B on the panel. The interface between PC and scanner is entirely disabled in this mode. The following display appears during the scanner initialization in the emulation switching mode activation.

Screen A

Function No. Display	Power LED	Description
8	ON	During initial processing

The console display changes as follows after initial processing.

Screen B

Function No. Display	Power LED	Description
8	ON	During maintenance mode

Releasing **Function** button ↓

Screen C

Function No. Display	Power LED	Description
8	ON	Emulation mode initial status

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	111/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

Operating Emulation mode

- (1) Press **Scan** button while **8** is displayed on the operator panel. The screen to select the scanner model appears. The number in Function No. Display and its scanner model to be emulated are as follows.

Function No. Display	Scanner	Comment
0	fi-5120C	Default (Standard)
1	fi-4120C	Emulation: returns "fi-4120Cdj" as Product ID. When USB interface is used, scanner operates with USB 1.1 connection.
2	fi-4120C2	Emulation: returns "fi-4120C2dj" as Product ID.

- (2) Press **Function** button to select the number, which indicates the scanner mode to emulate.
- (3) If the selection is correct, press **Scan** button to confirm the model number. The scanner displays model numbers of selected scanner by the method described in Note A at the end of this section.

The following buttons are available while the scanner is displaying model number for emulation.

Function button: Displays Screen E11 to confirm the selection of the scanner model.

Send to button: Returns to emulation mode initial display.

Screen E11

Function No. Display	Power LED	Description
	ON	"o" (lower half) blinks. Blinking cycle: 1.0S (The interval of lighting up and out is 0.5 seconds each)

<Available buttons at Screen E11>

Scan + **Function** button: Writes the scanner model of emulation in EEPROM. During writing, Screen E12 is shown. After writing scanner displays Screen E13, if the writing succeeds. Or scanner displays Screen E14, if it fails.

Send to button: Returns to the initial display of Emulation mode.

Screen E12

Function No. Display	Description
	Scanner is writing the data in EEPROM. Displays "L" blinking.

All buttons are disabled at Screen E12.

- (1) When the Emulation mode is terminated normally

Screen E13

Function No. Display	Description
	Normal end Displays "o" (upper half) blinking.

<Available buttons at Screen E13>

Send to button: Returns to emulation mode initial display.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	112/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

(2) When the Emulation mode is terminated abnormally

Screen E14

Function No. Display	Description
	Abnormal end Displays "C" blinking.

<Available buttons at Screen E14>

Send to button: Returns to emulation initial display.

Note A: The display of the scanner model of emulation is as follows.

Scanner model	Display method
fi-5120C	"5120" is displayed in the following order. "_" → "5" → "1" → "2" → "0" The mark, "-", is a start mark. Display period is 0.5 sec.
fi-4120C	"4120" is displayed in the following order. "_" → "4" → "1" → "2" → "0" The mark, "-", is a start mark. Display period is 0.5 sec.
fi-4120C2	"41202" is displayed in the following order. "_" → "4" → "1" → "2" → "0" → "2" The mark, "-", is a start mark. Display period is 0.5 sec.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	113/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

Chapter 6 Maintenance parts

<Scanner maintenance parts list>

POS	Description	Part Number	Quantity		Reference for Appearance	Reference for Replacement	
1	BASE UNIT	PA03484-D901	1		6-1	4-8	
2	LAMP INVERTER	PA03484-K907		1	6-2	4-10-2	
3	LAMP	PA03484-K906		1	6-3	4-10-4	
4	US SENSOR LOWER	PA03484-K904		1	6-4	4-10-3	
5	GUIDE A ASSY	PA03484-E901		1	6-5	4-10-1	
6	DUST COVER ASSY	PA03484-E906		1	6-6	4-10-5	
7	OPTICAL UNIT	PA03484-E903		1	6-7	4-10-6	
8	BW MOTOR	PA03484-F905		1	6-8	4-10-7	
9	CLUTCH	PA03484-F906		1	6-9	4-10-8	
10	GUIDE P ASSY	PA03484-E902		1	6-10	4-8	
11	UPPER UNIT	PA03484-D902	1		6-11	4-8	Note 1
		PA03484-D904				4-8	Note 2
12	UPPER ASSY	PA03484-E907		1	6-12	4-9-8	
13	ADF MOTOR	PA03484-F902		1	6-13	4-9-3	
14	OPTICAL UNIT	PA03484-E903		1	6-7	4-9-4	
15	LAMP INVERTER	PA03484-K907		1	6-2	4-9-2	
16	LAMP	PA03484-K906		1	6-3	4-9-5	
17	US SENSOR UPPER	PA03484-K905		1	6-14	4-9-6	
18	SENSOR EM	PA03334-F921		1	6-15	4-9-7	
		PA03334-F914 [02]					
19	PANEL PCA	PA03484-K903		1	6-16	4-9-1	
		PA03484-K907 [02]					
20	CONTROL PCA	PA03484-K901	1		6-17	4-11	
21	STACKER UNIT	PA03289-E904	1		6-18	4-6-2	
22	CHUTE UNIT	PA03484-E905	1		6-19	4-6-1	
23	AC ADAPTER	PA03484-K908	1		6-20		
25	AC CORDSET E	PA63085-2001	1		6-21	For the model PA03484-B001 PA03484-B031 [03]	
	AC CORDSET UK	PA63097-2001				For the following models: PA03484-B002, PA03484-B032, [03] PA03484-B005	
	AC CORDSET U	PA63086-2001				For the model PA03484-B007	
27	AC CORDSET C	PA63088-2001			6-23		

Note 1: for PA03484-B001, PA03484-B031, PA03484-B002, PA03484-B032 and PA03484-B005. [03]

Note 2: for PA03484-B007

02

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	114/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

6-1 Base Unit

Description	Parts No.	Remarks	Figure
Base Unit	PA03484-D901		6-1

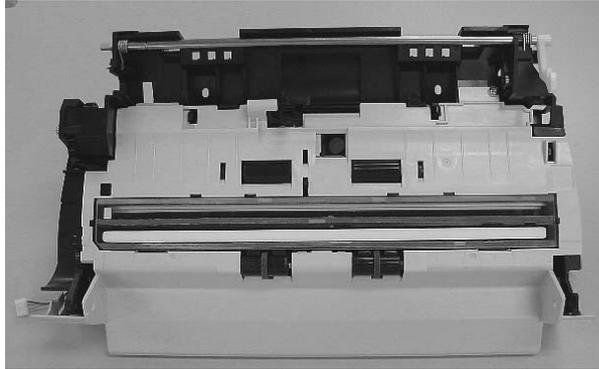


Figure 6-1

NOTICE

This unit includes a Lamp that contains mercury.
Dispose of the scanner should be conducted as required by local ordinances or regulations.

6-2 Lamp Inverter

Description	Parts No.	Remarks	Figures
Lamp Inverter	PA03484-K907		6-2

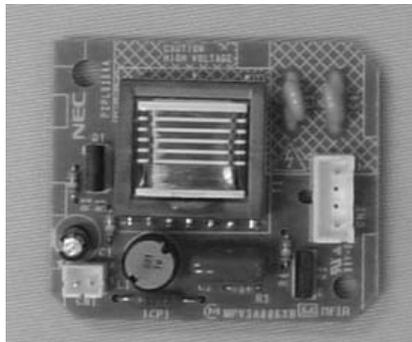


Figure 6-2

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	115/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

6-3 Lamp

Description	Parts No.	Remarks	Figures
Lamp	PA03484-K906		6-3

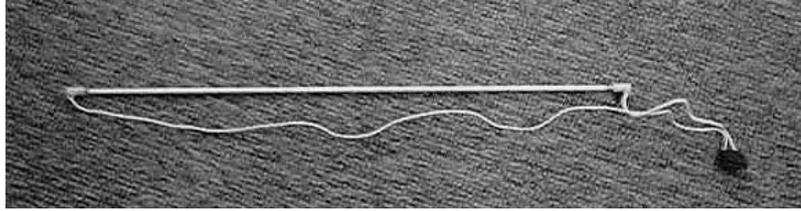


Figure 6-3

NOTICE

Lamp includes mercury.

Dispose of the scanner should be conducted as required by local ordinances or regulations.

6-4 US Sensor Lower

Description	Parts No.	Remarks	Figures
US Sensor Lower	PA03484-K904		6-4

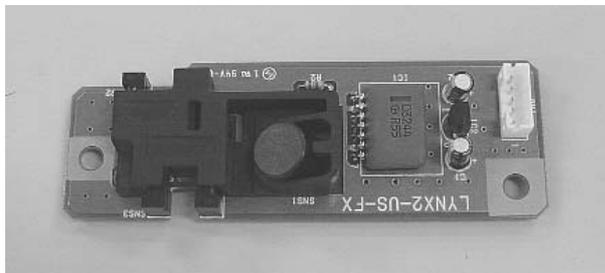


Figure 6-4

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	116/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

6-5 Guide A ASSY

Description	Parts No.	Remarks	Figure
Guide A ASSY	PA03484-E901		6-5

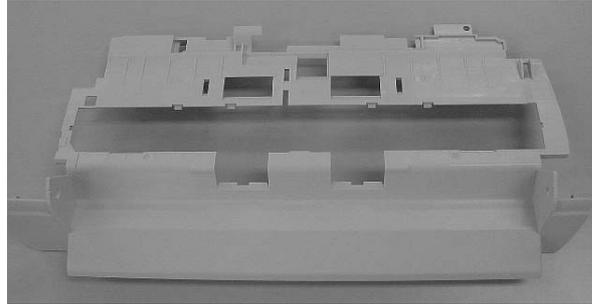


Figure 6-5

6-6 Dust Cover ASSY

Description	Parts No.	Remarks	Figures
Dust Cover ASSY	PA03484-E906	Coil springs for the plastic rollers are not included. 06	6-6

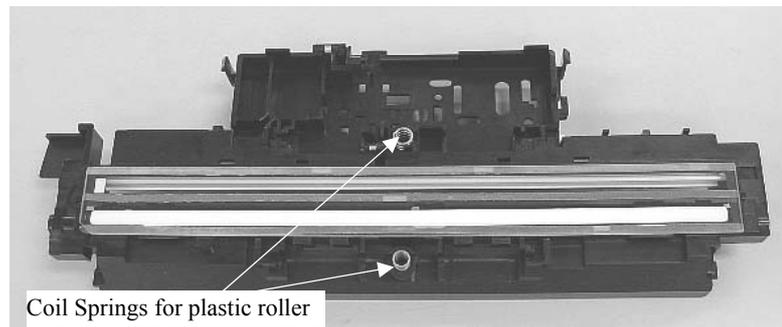


Figure 6-6

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	117/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

6-7 Optical Unit

Description	Parts No.	Remarks	Figure
Optical Unit	PA03484-E903		6-7

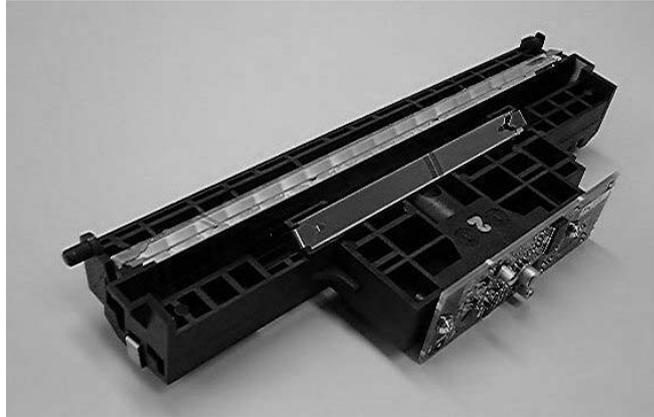


Figure 6-7

6-8 BW Motor

Description	Parts No.	Remarks	Figures
BW Motor	PA03484-F905		6-8

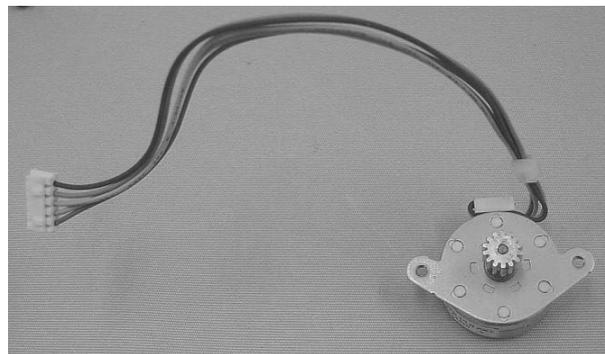


Figure 6-8

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL							
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	Rev		DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada			

6-9 Clutch

Description	Parts No.	Remarks	Figures
Clutch	PA03484-F906		6-9

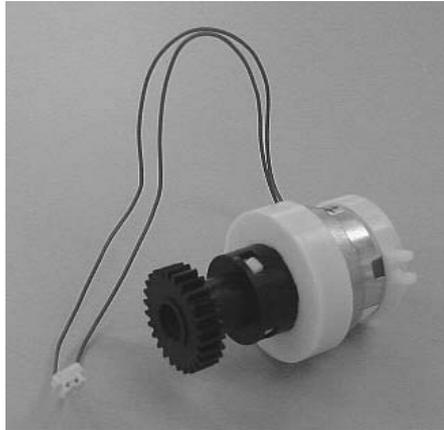


Figure 6-9

6-10 Guide P ASSY

Description	Parts No.	Remarks	Figure
Guide P ASSY	PA03484-E902		6-10

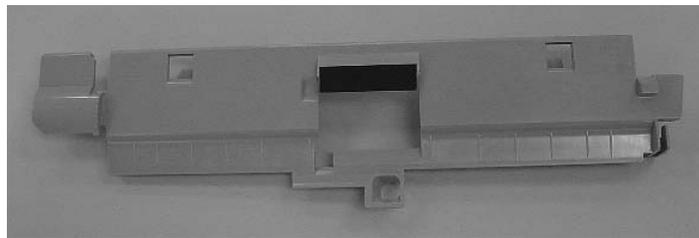


Figure 6-10

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	119/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

6-11 Upper Unit

Description	Parts No.	Remarks	Figure
Upper Unit	PA03484-D902	English display	6-11
	PA03484-D904	Chinese display	

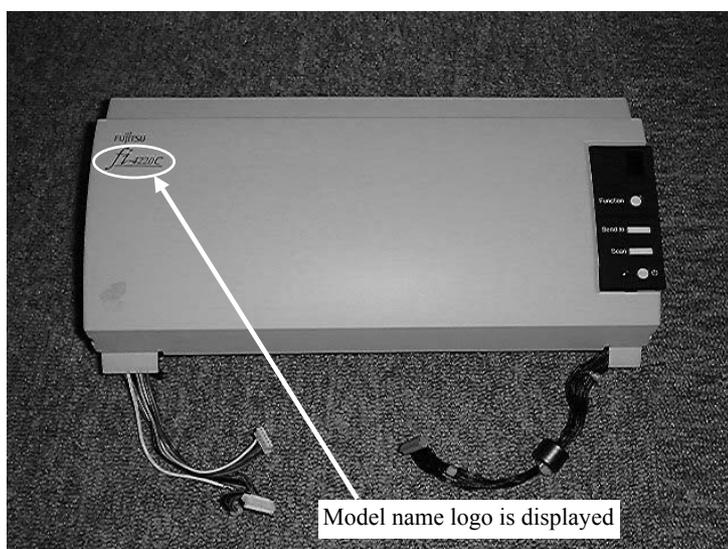


Figure 6-11

NOTICE

This unit includes a Lamp that contains mercury.
 Dispose of the scanner should be conducted as required by local ordinances or regulations.

6-12 Upper ASSY

Description	Parts No.	Remarks	Figures
Upper ASSY	PA03484-E907		6-12

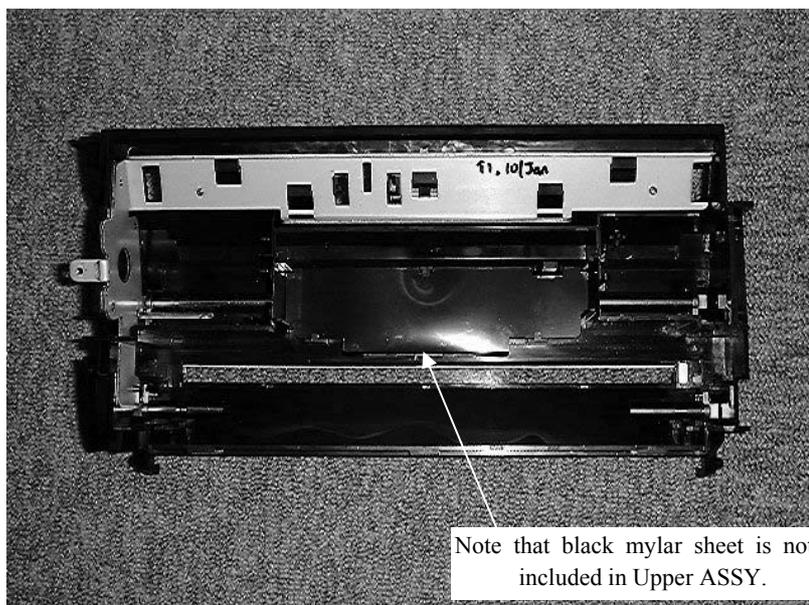


Figure 6-12

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6	
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DESCRIPTION		PFU LIMITED	
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				120/176
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION				
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

6-13 ADF Motor

Description	Parts No.	Remarks	Figures
ADF Motor	PA03484-F902		6-13



Figure 6-13

6-14 US Sensor Upper

Description	Parts No.	Remarks	Figures
US Sensor Upper	PA03484-K905		6-14

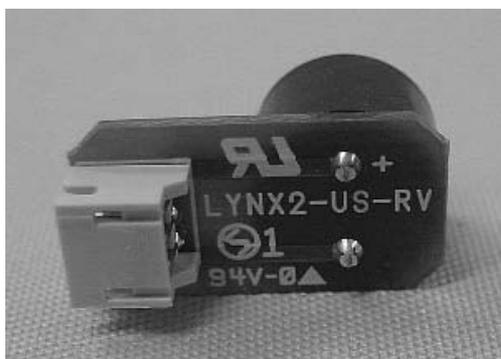


Figure 6-14

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	121/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

6-15 Sensor EM

Description	Parts No.	Remarks	Figures
Sensor EM	PA03334-F921 PA03334-F914 02		6-15

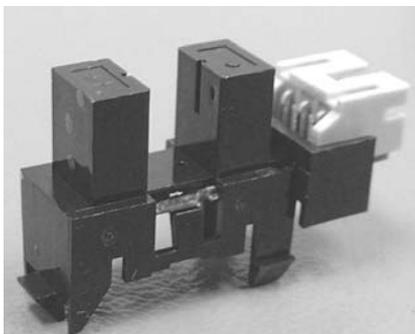


Figure 6-15

6-16 Panel PCA

Description	Parts No.	Remarks	Figures
Panel PCA	PA03484-K903 PA03484-K907 02		6-16

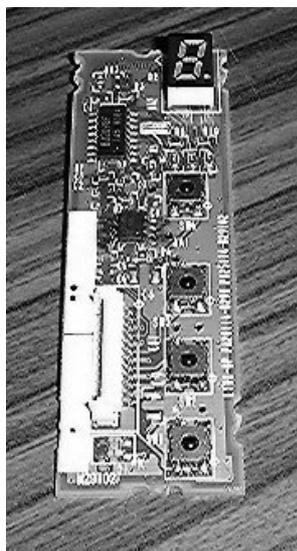


Figure 6-16

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	122/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

6-17 Control PCA

Description	Parts No.	Remarks	Figures
Control PCA	PA03484-K901		6-17

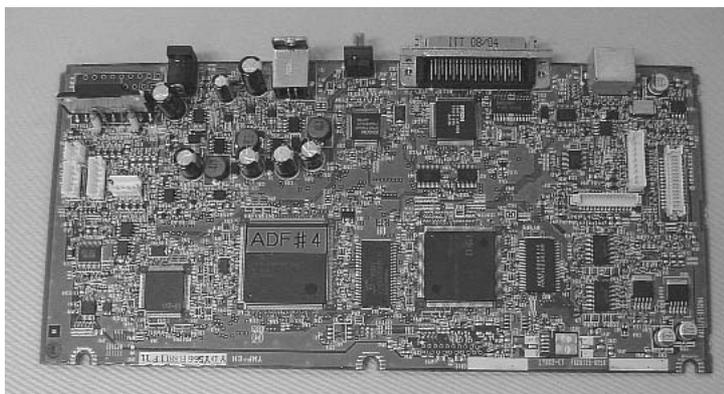


Figure 6-17

6-18 Stacker Unit

Description	Parts No.	Remarks	Figure
Stacker Unit	PA03289-E904		6-18

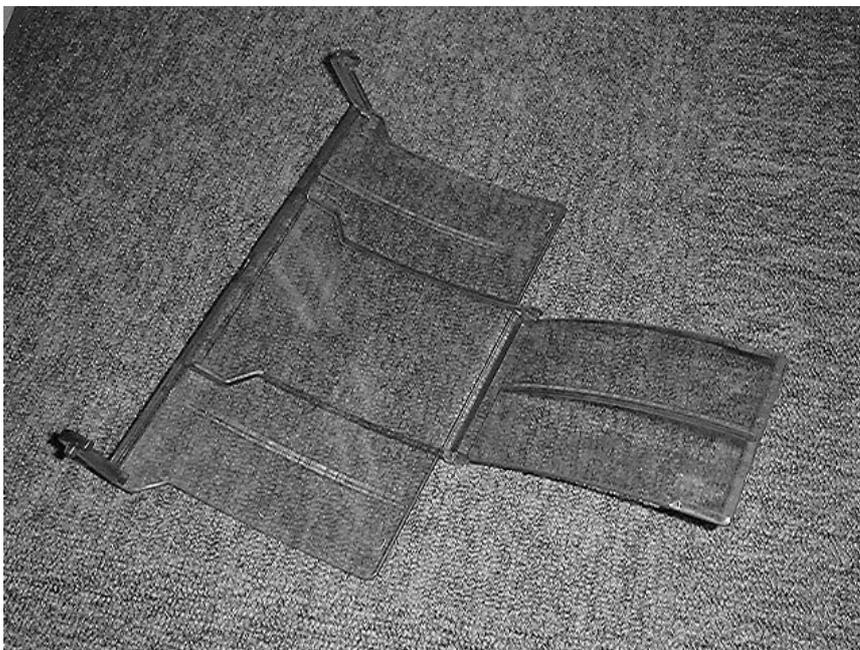


Figure 6-18

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	123/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

6-19 Chute Unit

Description	Parts No.	Remarks	Figures
Chute Unit	PA03484-E905		6-19

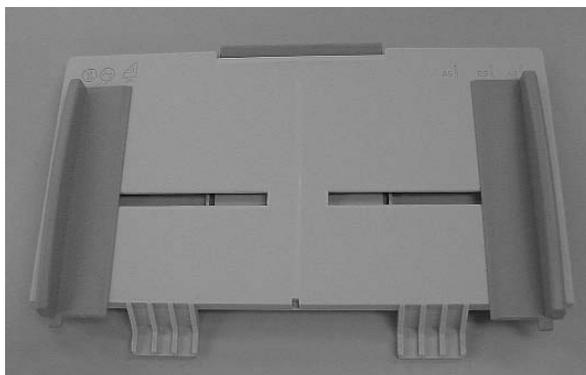


Figure 6-19

6-20 AC Adapter

Description	Parts No.	Remarks	Figures
AC Adapter	PA03484-K908		6-20



Figure 6-20

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	124/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

02

6-21 AC Cordset E / AC Cordset UK

Description	Parts No.	Remarks	Figures
AC Cordset E	PA63085-2001	For the model PA03484-B001 and PA03484-B031 03	6-21
AC Cordset UK	PA63097-2001		

02

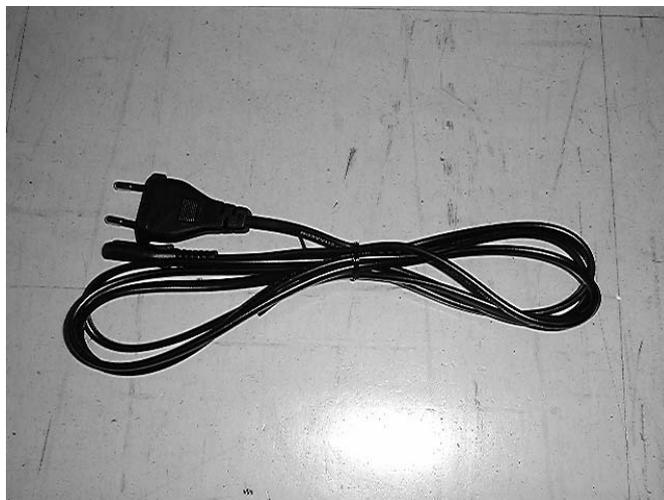


Figure 6-21

6-22 AC Cordset U

Description	Parts No.	Remarks	Figures
AC Cordset U	PA63086-2001	For the models PA03484-B002 PA03484-B032 03 PA03484-B005	6-22

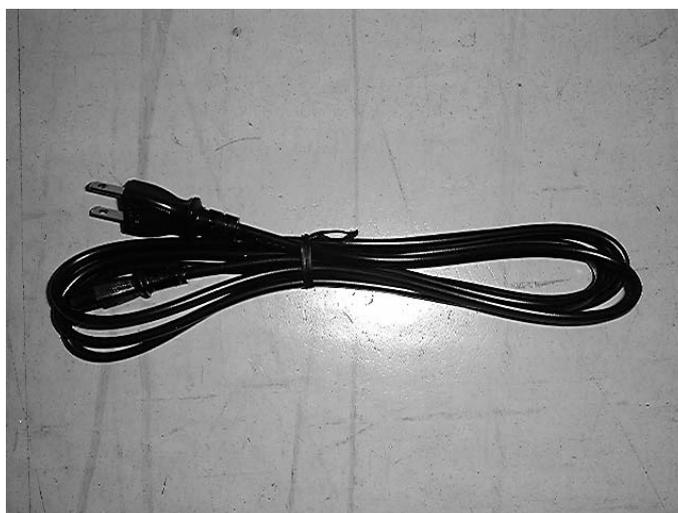
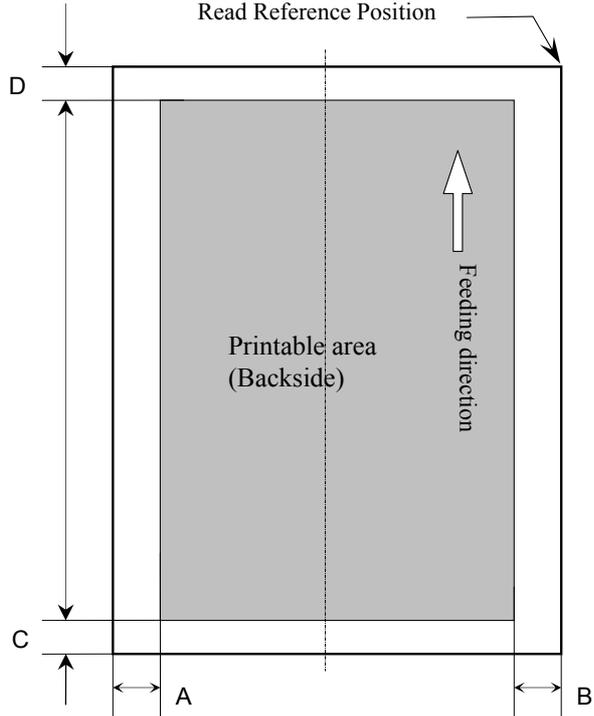
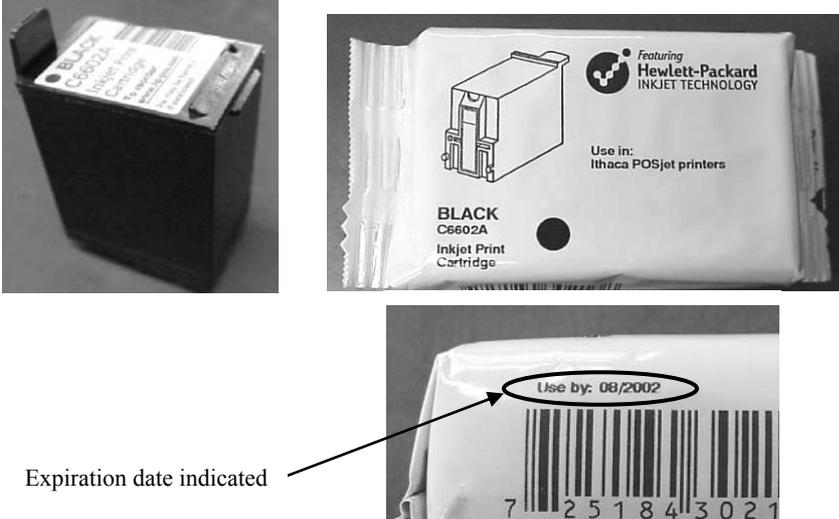


Figure 6-22

6-23 AC Cordset C

Description	Parts No.	Remarks	Figures
AC Cordset C	PA63088-2001	For the model PA03484-B007	

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL	
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.			
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6	
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.			
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	125/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai			

No.	Items	Specifications
9	Printable area	<p> $A \geq 5\text{mm}$ $B \geq 5\text{mm}$ $C \geq 5\text{mm}$ $D \geq 5\text{mm}$ (0.20 inch) </p> 
10	Accuracy of printing position	$\pm 4\text{mm}$ from the starting point for feeding direction
11	Consumables	<p> Print cartridge (P/N.: CA00050-0262) Print color: Black Replacement cycle: 4,000,000 characters (The number of characters may decrease depending on the fonts selection.) </p>  <p>Expiration date indicated</p>

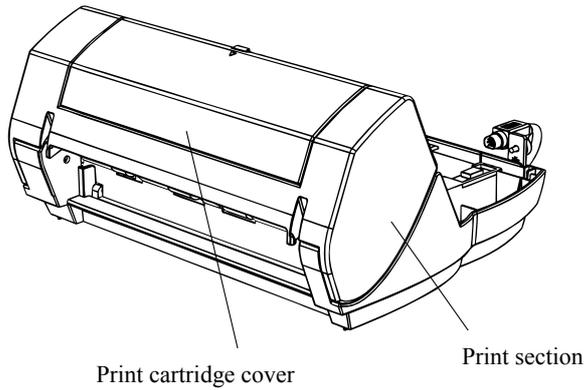
7-1-2 Environmental specification

No.	Items	Specifications
1	Outer dimensions (mm)	300 (W) x 241 (D) x 146 (H) mm / 11.81(W) x 9.49 (D) x 5.75 (H) in (Imprinter only, Stacker not included) 303 (W) x 437 (D) x 277(H) mm / 11.93 (W) x 17.2 (D) x 10.91 (H) in (With scanner)
2	Weights	2.5kg (5.51 lb) or less
3	Temperature	10 to 35 °C (50 to 95 °F)
4	Humidity	20 to 80%

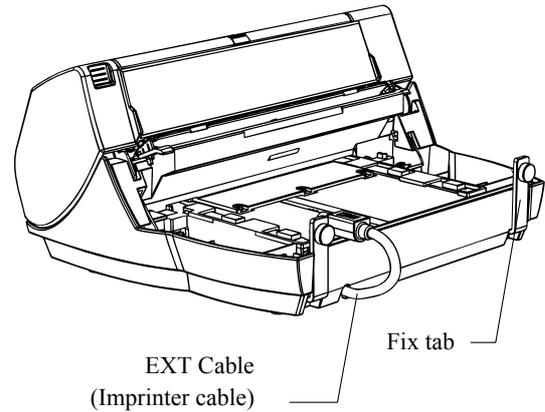
05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	127/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

7-1-3 Appearance
<Imprinter unit>

Front side

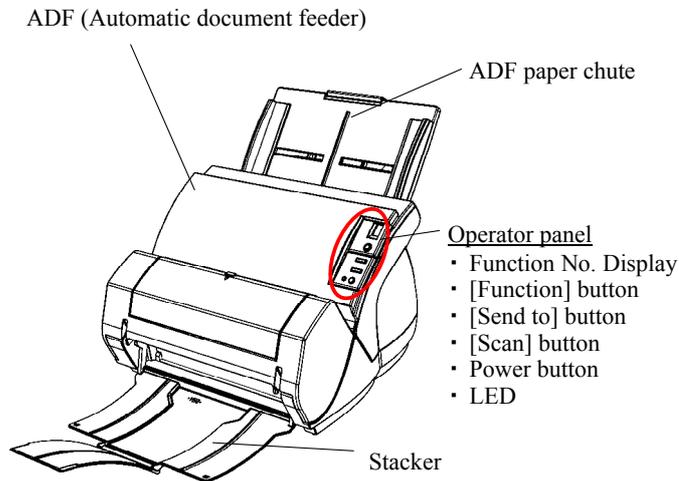


Rear side

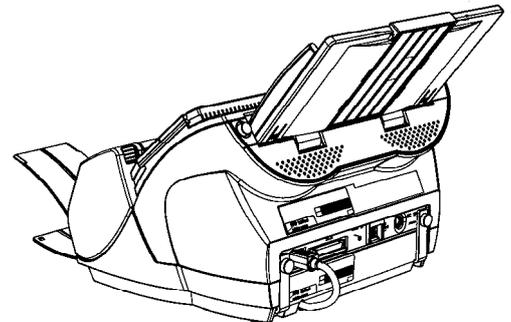


<Imprinter with Scanner Installed>

Front side



Rear side

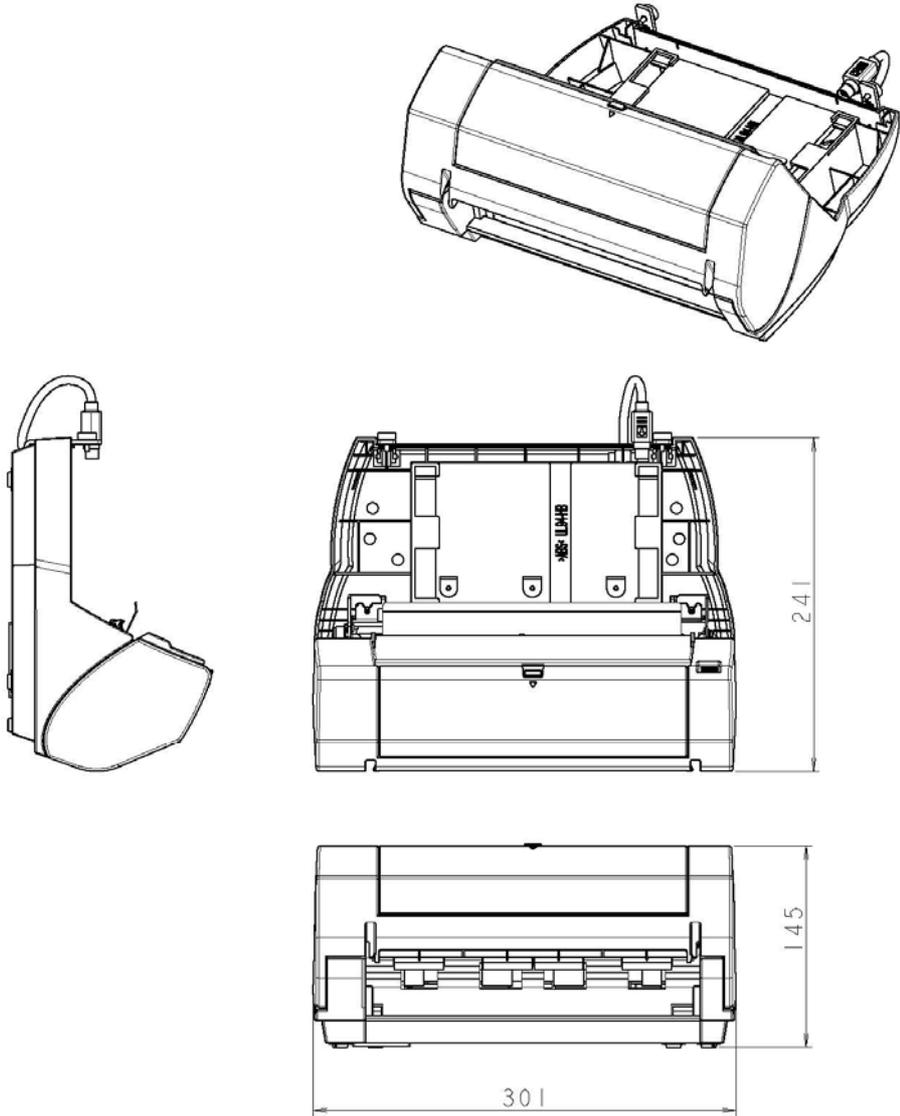


Open Print Cartridge Cover



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6	
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	128/176
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION				
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

<Outer Dimensions>



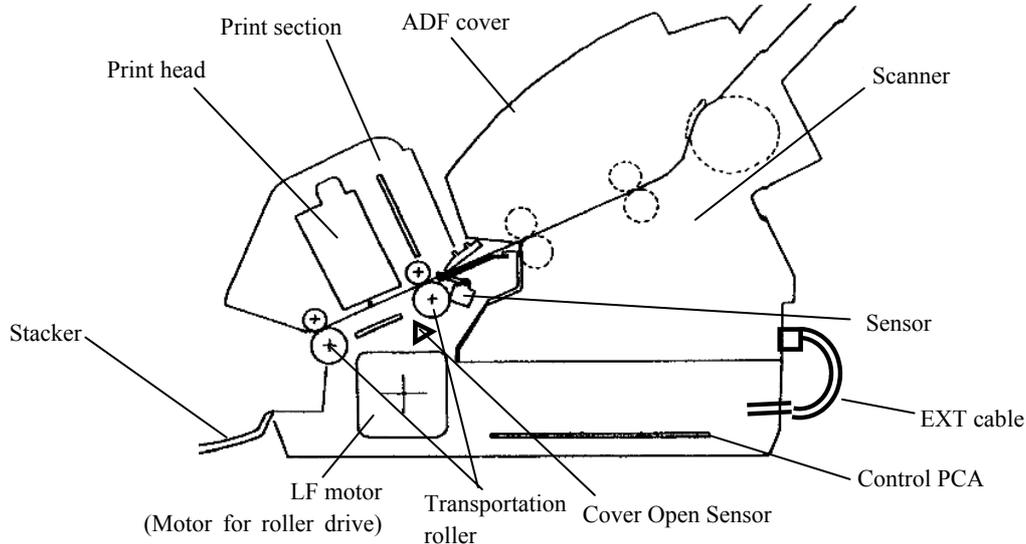
05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	129/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

7-1-4 Imprinter Operation Description

When the scanner is powered ON, it investigates if the Imprinter EXT cable is connected to the scanner. If connected, the firmware judges that the imprinter is installed and drives Imprinter print head, sensor control, and transportation roller by the LF motor. The leading edge of the original fed from the ADF is detected by the Sensor and used for controlling the printing start timing. If the printing section is open, it is detected by the "ADF Cover Open Sensor" (See [Section 7-6-13](#)).

To avoid interference between the Imprinter printing section and the ADF cover, open the Imprinter printing section before opening the ADF cover. Follow the procedure in reverse when closing.

If the message to instruct to replace the print cartridge on the PC display, you need to replace the cartridge and reset the remaining ink counter (See [Section 7-3-4](#)).



See the following sections for details of the errors and defects related to the Imprinter:

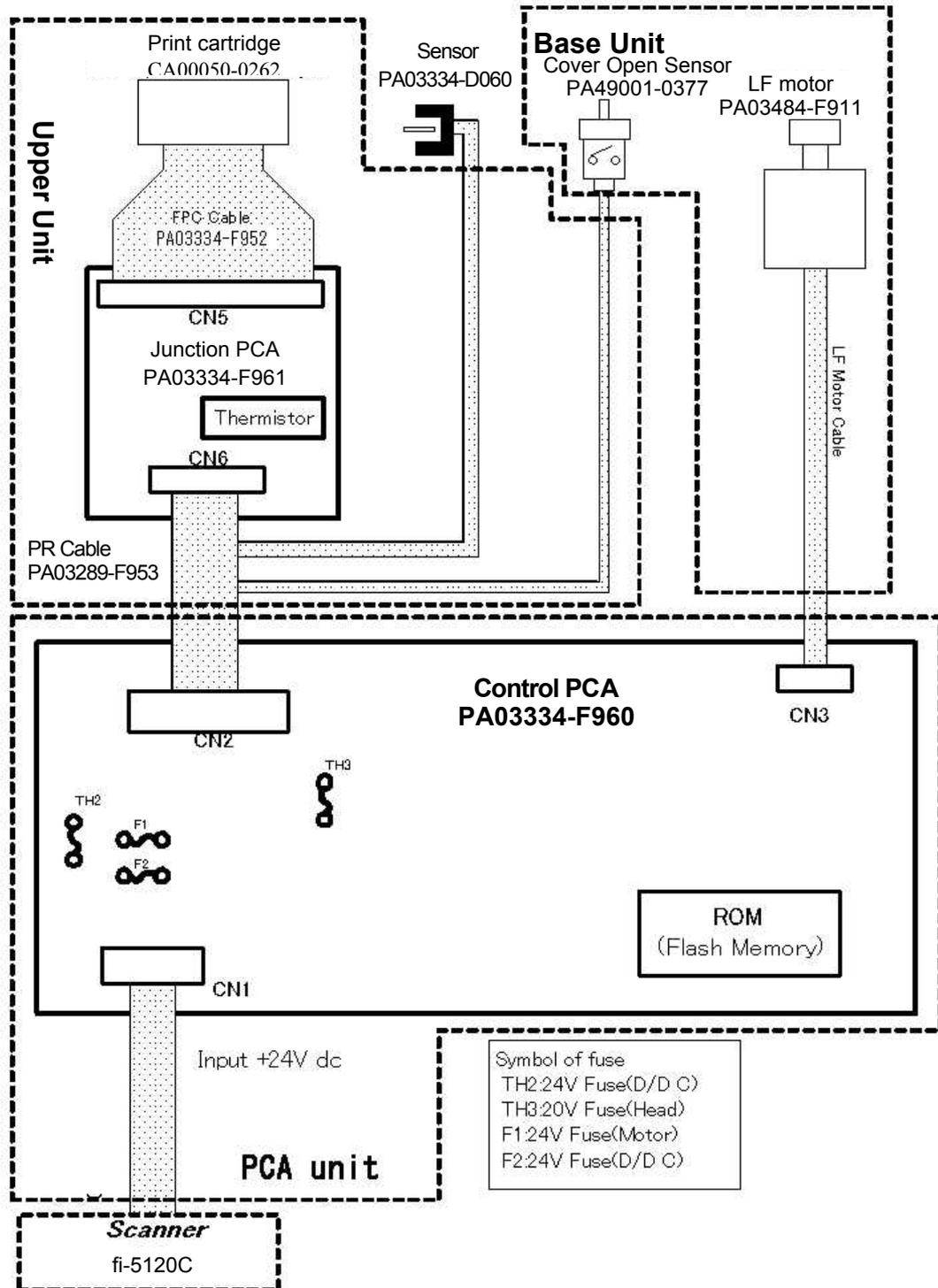
Errors and defects	Error detection method	Recovery method
U1: Paper jam	See Section 3-2-1 .	See Section 3-3-13 .
U4: Cover open	See Section 3-2-1 .	See Section 3-3-15 .
U6" No print cartridge	See Section 3-2-1 .	See Section 3-3-27 .
EA: Imprinter alarm	See Section 3-2-2 .	See Section 3-3-28 .
No initial operation	---	See Section 3-3-26 .
Print-related errors	---	See Section 3-3-29 . See Section 3-3-30 . See Section 3-3-31 .

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	130/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

7-1-5 Circuit Block Diagram

The circuit block diagram of the Imprinter is as shown below.

Electric Component Block Diagram



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	131/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

7-2 Unpacking and Installation of Imprinter

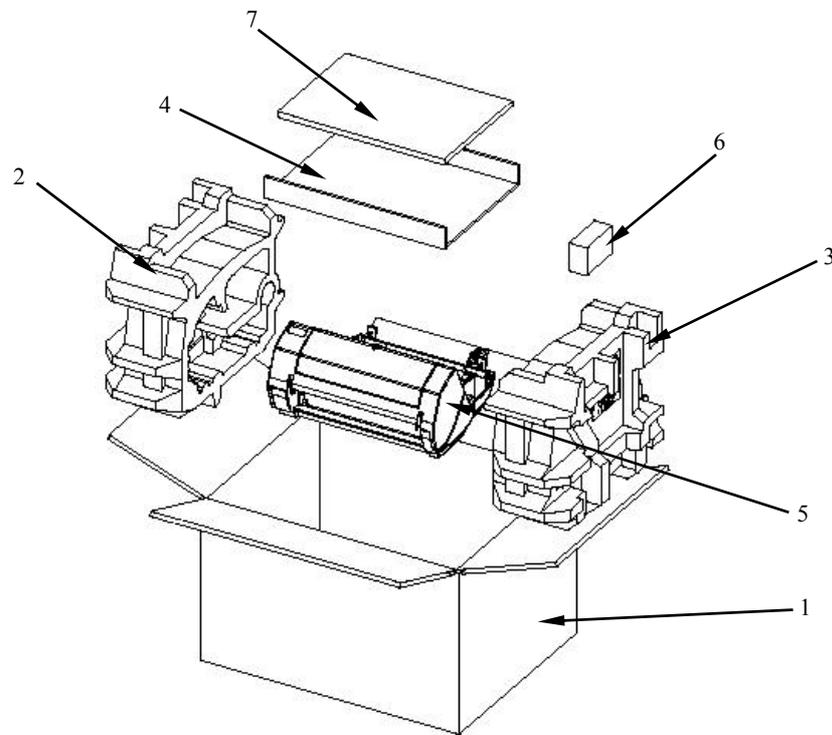
7-2-1 Unpacking the Imprinter

Follow the procedure below to unpack the Imprinter. Make sure that all the accessories are included in the package.

1. Remove the tape to open the package box.
2. Remove the accessories and the partition.
3. Remove the cushions L/R, then Imprinter.
4. Remove the imprinter from the polyethylene bag.
5. Remove the tape protecting the Imprinter.

The following table lists the packaging configuration.

No.	Items	Quantity	Remarks
1	Package box	1	
2	Cushion L	1	
3	Cushion R	1	
4	Partition	1	
5	Imprinter	1	
6	Print Cartridge	1	
7	Operator's Guide, Packaging list	1	



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	132/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

7-2-2 Installing the Imprinter

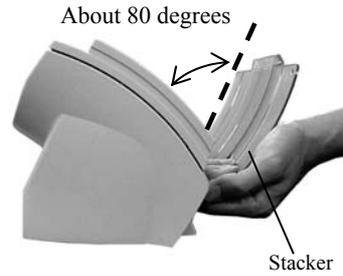
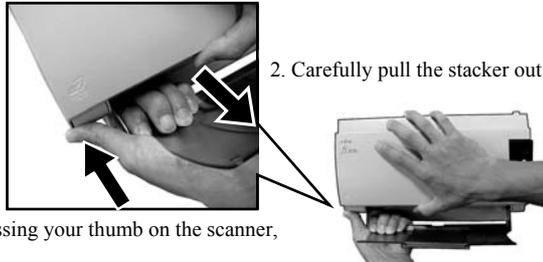
Install the Imprinter in the following procedure.

1. Press the  button to switch off the Scanner and disconnect the AC cable.

2. Remove the stacker from the scanner.

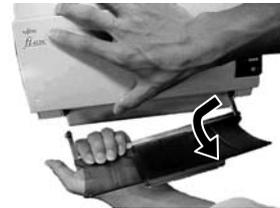
1) Hold the left side of the stacker with left hand.

2) While pressing on the scanner with your thumb, pull the stacker gently away from the scanner.



3) When the left side of the stacker has been released from the scanner, remove the right side of the stacker.

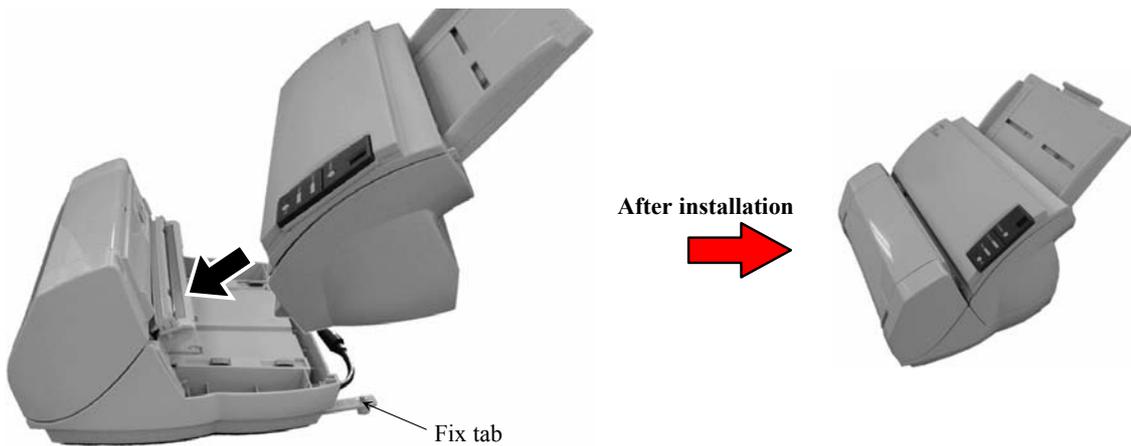
You must remove the stacker before installing scanner to the Imprinter.



3. Remove the two Thumb Screws located at the back of the scanner.



4. Install the scanner on to the Imprinter.

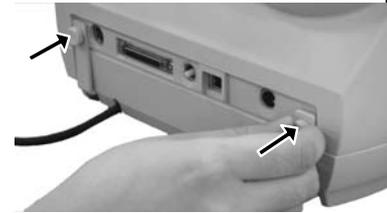


Hold the Scanner above the rear side of the Imprinter and gently place the Scanner on to the base of the Imprinter while lowering it forward until it makes contact with the Imprinter.

- Be careful not to place the scanner on to the Fix tabs or hit hard against them as you might damage the Fix tabs.
- Take care not to pinch your fingers.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	133/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

5. Insert the Thumb Screws attached to the Fix tabs into the two positions in the rear of the Imprinter; and tighten them to secure the imprinter to the Scanner.

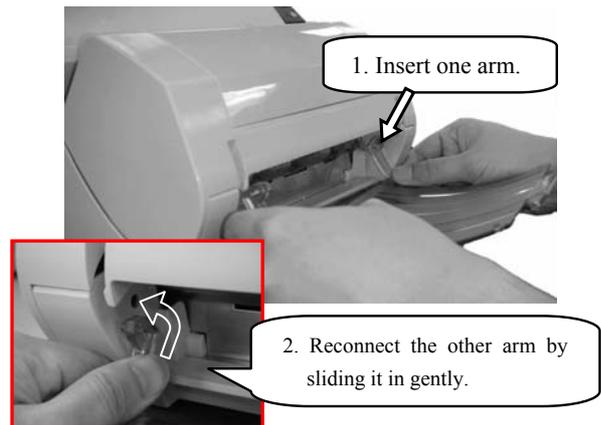


6. Join the Imprinter cable (EXT cable) to the connector in the rear of the Scanner.

The Imprinter will not work if the EXT cable is not connected to the Scanner. Scanning when the EXT cable is not connected can cause documents to jam inside the Imprinter.



7. Replace the stacker (removed in step 2) to the Imprinter.



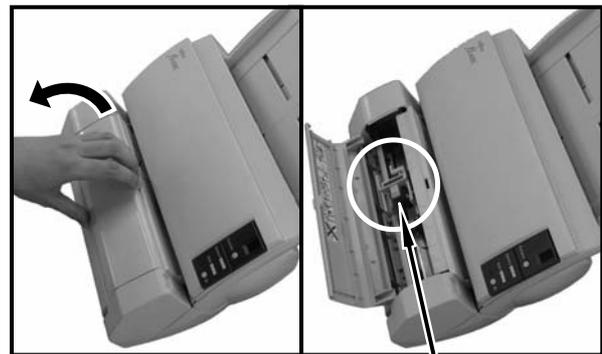
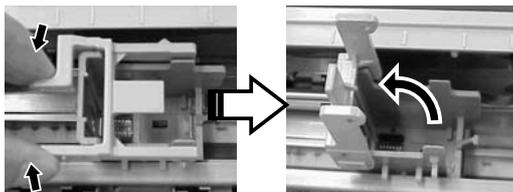
8. Connect the AC cable to the scanner.

7-2-3 Loading the Print cartridge

Install the Print cartridge in the following procedure.

When installing or replacing the print cartridge, be careful not to insert it out of place.

1. Confirm that the scanner is turned OFF.
2. To open the cover, grasp and pull open the center of the Print cartridge cover, turning it open towards you.
3. Remove by pulling the tape seal that is affixed to the Print cartridge holder and the Paper Guides.
4. Pinch slightly together the handles with your fingers, as shown below, to release it from its cartridge tray holder and turn it upwards to open the tray holder.



Print Cartridge Holder

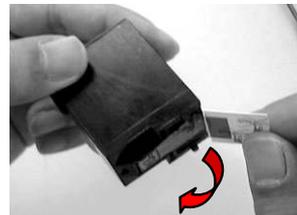
05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	134/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

5. Remove the new print cartridge from its pouch.



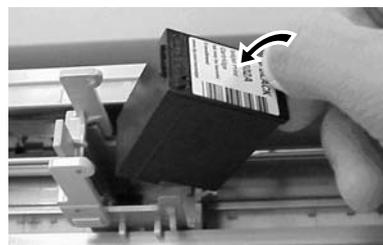
6. Remove the protection tape from the Print cartridge.

Do not touch the metal part of the cartridge nor put the tape back on again.

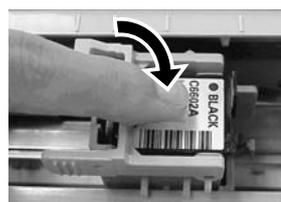


7. Place the Print cartridge into the holder as shown on the right.

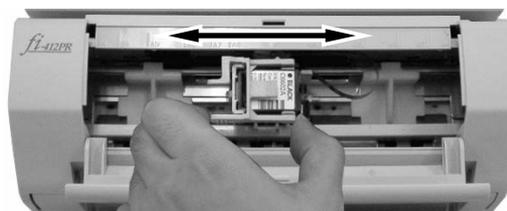
Be careful not let the Print cartridge touch or catch onto the print circuit film.



8. Lower the handle until it locks in and fixes the cartridge in place.



9. Position the Print cartridge holder along where the document will pass through.
=>The print will be located on the page properly for your application.



10. Close the print cartridge cover.

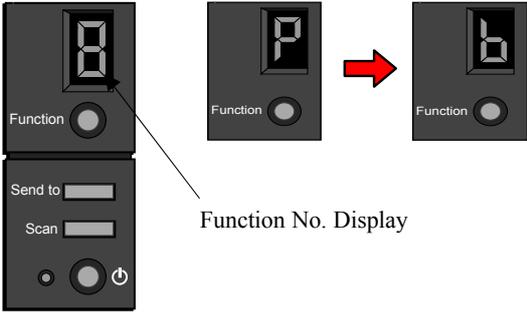


05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6	
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	135/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

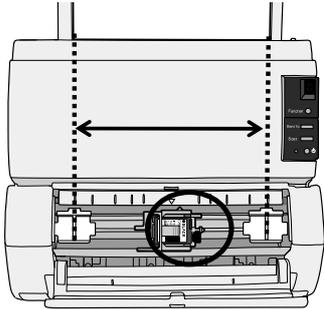
7-2-4 Operation Test

After installing the Imprinter, check if the printing operation can be done in the Offline Print Test mode of the scanner.

1. Turn OFF the scanner by pressing the  button.
2. Confirm that the print section and the ADF are closed.
3. While pressing the **Function** button on the operator panel, press the  button.
Continue pressing the **Function** button.
4. Release the **Function** button when the Function Number Display changes from [P] to [b].
5. Place a blank document into the ADF paper chute (Chute Unit).



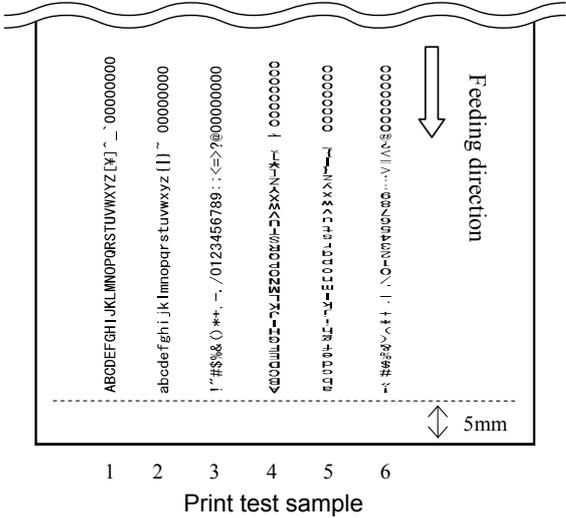
- Use A4 or Letter size paper. If the size is smaller than A4 or Letter,, printing may not complete successfully.
- Confirm that the Print cartridge is positioned within the document width (See the picture on the right).



6. Press the **Scan** button to test.
=> The paper will be fed into the ADF, and the Imprinter will print out the Print Test Characters starting at 5mm from the paper edge (the range of error is ±4mm).

Print Test Patterns

- Test pattern 1 (horizontal):**
ABCDEFGHIJKLMN OPQRSTUVWXYZ[¥]^_`00000000
- Test pattern 2 (horizontal):**
abcdefghijklmnopqrstu vwxyz{|}~ 00000000
- Test pattern 3 (horizontal):**
!"#\$%&()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@00000000
- Test pattern 4 (vertical):**
ABCDEFGHIJKLMN OPQRSTUVWXYZ[¥]^_`00000000
- Test pattern 5 (vertical):**
abcdefghijklmnopqrstu vwxyz{|}~ 00000000
- Test pattern 6 (vertical):**
!"#\$%&()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>?@00000000



When multiple sheets of documents are placed in the ADF, the Test Print repeats patterns from 1 through 6. The numbering data portion "00000000" changes from 0 (Zero) with increment of 1 (one).

(One test pattern is printed at a time. Press the [Scan] button to continue printing the next test pattern.)

7. To stop Offline Print test mode, press the  button.
The scanner will switch off.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	136/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

7-3 Basic Operation of the Imprinter

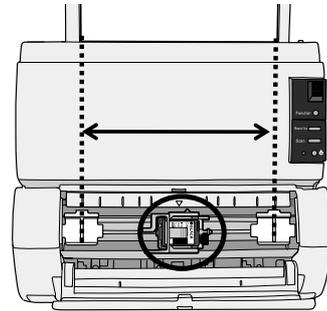
7-3-1 Setting The Print Position

To position the print cartridge for printing:

1. Open the Print cartridge cover.
2. Hold the Print cartridge holder as below, and slide it to the left and right within the document width to set it at a suitable print starting position.



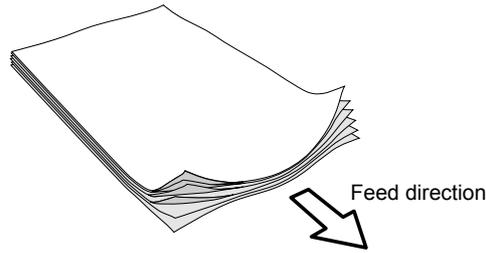
- The small “▲” protruding from the upper right hand side of the Print cartridge tray handle indicates the current print position on the page.
- Above the print cartridge tray are document size markings; Use them to adjust for paper size and printing position.
- Put the actual document in the ADF and confirm that the Print cartridge is positioned within the document width.



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Oakada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	137/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

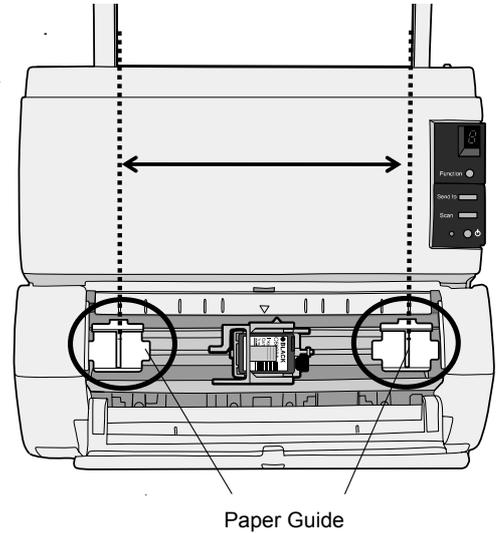
7-3-2 How to Use the Paper Guides

Use the Paper Guides to prevent against paper jams due to curling of the edges, as shown below.



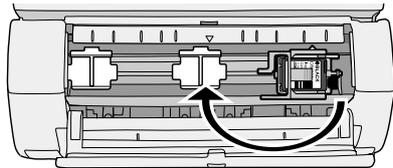
Place the Paper Guides at the ends where the paper edges will pass through.

1. Insert the document in the scanner.
2. Open the Print cartridge cover.
3. Slide the Paper Guides to the left and right of the paper edges.

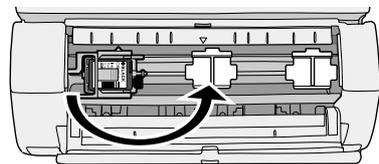


When you wish to print on the near the edge of a wide width paper, remove the Paper Guide in order to open space for the Print cartridge, and attach it at the center.

For right side edge printing



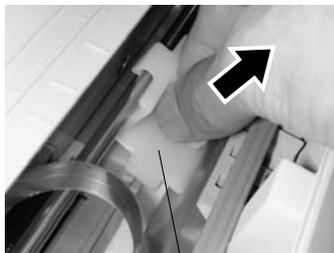
For left side edge printing



Be careful not to let the Paper Guide touch or catch onto the print circuit film.

<To remove the Paper Guides>

Pressing and holding together with your fingers, as below, lift up and pull away the guide.

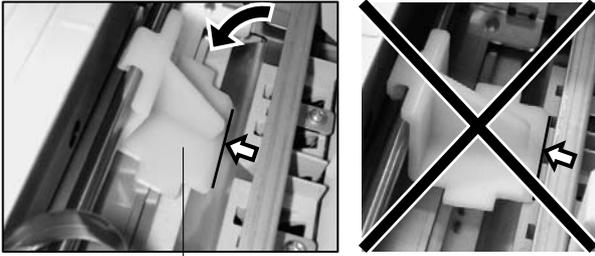


Paper Guide

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	138/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

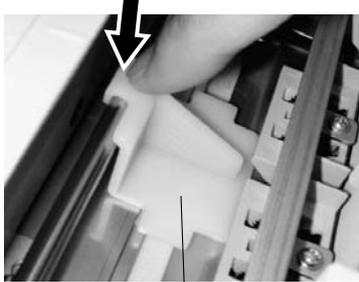
<To attach the Paper Guides>

1. The Paper Guide should be in place as in the photo on the left below.



Paper Guide

2. The top portion of the guide should be pushed in to fit tightly.



Paper Guide

7-3-3 Print Setting

You can configure settings for the Imprinter by using the scanner driver dialog box.

FUJITSU TWAIN driver (example)

Click **Option** button

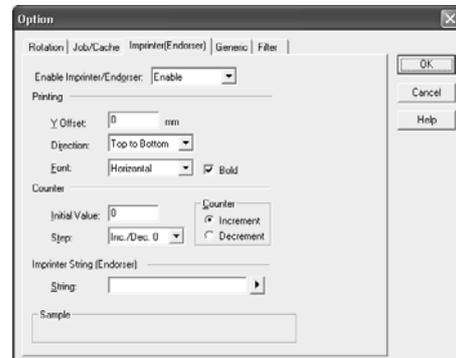
In [Option] dialog box, choose [Imprinter (Endorser)] tab and specify the Imprinter settings.

The following items can be set:

- Imprinter (endorser) valid (F)

Select "Invalid" if you are not going to print with the Imprinter.

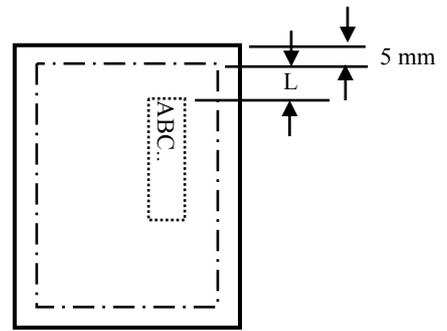
Select "Valid" if you are going to print with the Imprinter



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	139/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

- Offset (Y)

Specify the print position (L) shown in the photo on the right in unit of mm.



- Output direction (R) and Font (F)

Specify the print direction in the following combination.

		Output direction (R)	
		“Down”	“Up”
Font (F)	“Vertical”		
	“Horizontal”		

- Bold

Input the check mark on this item if you want to make the characters bold.

- Initial value (counter output)

Specify the initial value of the counter output.

- Step (counter output)

Specify the increase and decrease range of the counter.

- Counter revision (counter output)

Specify whether the counter value is added or subtracted.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		PFU LIMITED		PAGE
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION				
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

- Printed character strings

Specify the character strings to be printed.

You can print out the following character strings by the direct input.

Alphabet: A~Z, a~z

Numbers: 0, 1~9

Signals: !"#%&'()*+,-./:;<=>@[¥]^_`{|}~

Others: (Space)

(If the space is inserted at the beginning of sentence, the space is ignored.)

IN addition, the following definitions can be used. These definitions can also be selected from the menu displayed by clicking 

%YYYY: Prints the scanned year by the Christian year (4 digits)

%YYY: Prints the scanned year by the Japanese year (Heisei)

%YY: Prints the scanned year by the last two digits of the Christian year

%MMM: Prints the scanned month in English abbreviation. "JAN" is printed in January, "FEB" in February, and so on.

%MM: Prints the scanned month in 2 digits. If the month is one digit, "0" is added to the left digit. "01" is printed in January and "12" in December.

%M: Prints the scanned month in the required minimum number of digits. "1" is printed in January and "12" in December.

%DD: Prints the scanned date in 2 digits. If the date is one digit, "0" is added to the left digit. "03" is printed in the 3rd, and "26" in the 26th.

%D: Prints the scanned date in the required minimum number of digits. "3" is printed in the 3rd, and "26" in the 26th.

%HH: Prints the scanned time (hour) in 2 digits on a 24-hour basis. If the hour is one digit, "0" is added to the left digit. "08" is printed at 8 o'clock in the morning, and "14" at 2 o'clock afternoon.

%H: Prints the scanned time (hour) in the required minimum number of digits on a 24-hour basis. "8" is printed at 8 o'clock in the morning, and "14" at 2 o'clock afternoon.

%NN: Prints the scanned time (minute) in 2 digits. If the minute is one digit, "0" is added to the left digit. "02" is printed at 8:02, and "48" at 2:48.

%N: Prints the scanned time (minute) in the required minimum number of digits. "2" is printed at 8:02, and "48" at 2:48.

%0Nud: Prints the counter value which increases and decreases on every page in N digits.

Specifiable counter digits are 5 and 8 digits and they are described as "%05ud" and "%08ud" respectively.

You can specify the initial counter value, how to increase and decrease, etc. in the "Counter" described previously.

This specification is available only at the end of the printing character column.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	141/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

7-3-4 Replacing the Print cartridge

When the screen shown on the right appears, replace the Print cartridge immediately.

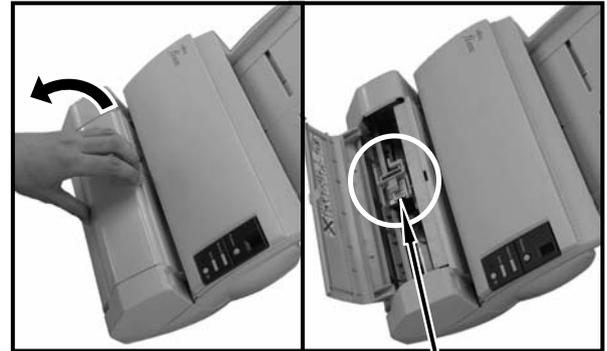
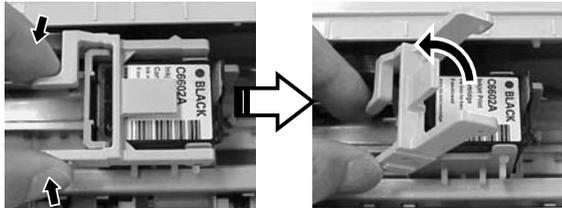
- If you continue to print without replacing the cartridge, your print output will continue to appear lighter and lighter.
- When installing or replacing the print cartridge, be careful not to insert it out of place.

Refer to [Section 7-1-1](#) for the specification of the Print cartridge.



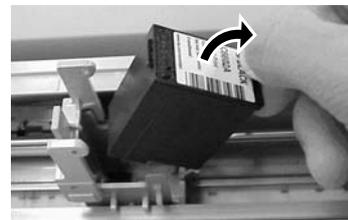
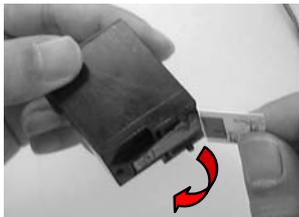
Example

1. Press the  button to turn off the Scanner.
2. Open the cover, by grasping the center of the Print cartridge cover and pull it while turning the cover downward towards you, as shown on the right.
3. Pinch slightly the handles of the closing lever to release it from its cartridge tray holder and turn it upwards to open the tray holder.



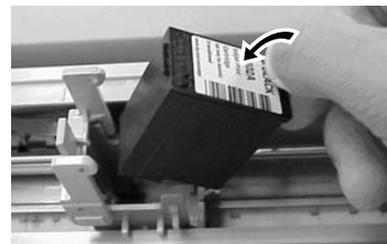
Print cartridge holder

4. Remove the old Print cartridge from the Print cartridge holder.
5. Take the new Print cartridge out of its pouch and detach the protection tape from the Print cartridge.



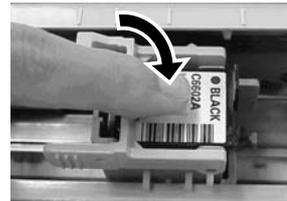
Do not touch the metal part of the cartridge nor put the tape back on again.

6. Insert the Print cartridge in the holder with its tab pointing to the right.



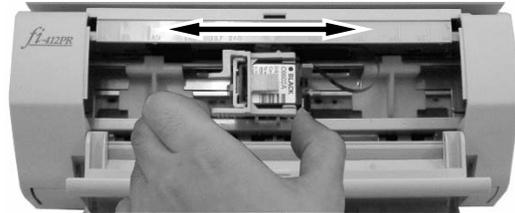
05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	142/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

- Lower the closing lever gently until it locks in and fixes the cartridge in place.



- Position the Print cartridge holder along where the document will pass through and position the print on the scanned page properly for your application..

Printing too close to a document's edge can leave little or no room for further printing. Be sure to position the print cartridge to have enough space.

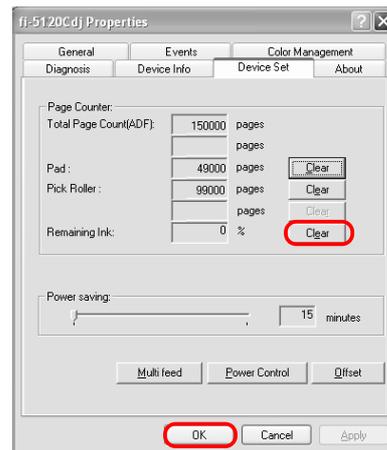


- Close the Print cartridge cover.
- Turn ON the scanner.
- Reset the remaining ink counter.

You must reset the Remaining ink counter whenever you replace the print cartridge.

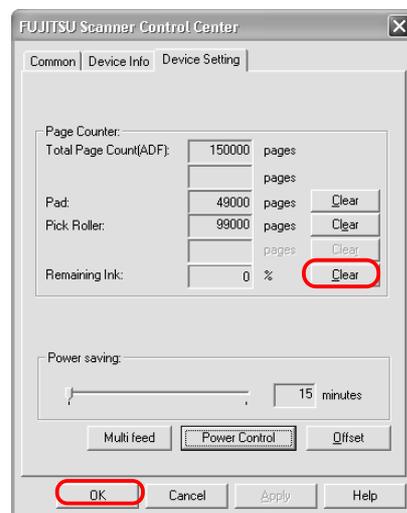
For Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP

- On the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel].
- Select [Scanners and Cameras].
- On the fi-5120C Scanner icon, right-click and select [Properties] (for Windows Me, Windows XP) or double-click (for Windows 98, Windows 2000).
- Select [Device Set] tab.
- Click [Clear] button on [Remaining ink].
=>Remaining ink counter is reset to 100%.
- Click [OK] button.
- The confirmation window will be displayed. Click [OK] button.



Windows 95, Windows NT 4.0

- Right-click the  icon in taskbar and select [Option].
- Select [Device Setting] tab.
- Click [Clear] button on [Remaining ink].
- The confirmation window will be displayed. Click [Yes] button.
=>Remaining ink counter is reset to 100%.
- Click [OK] button.



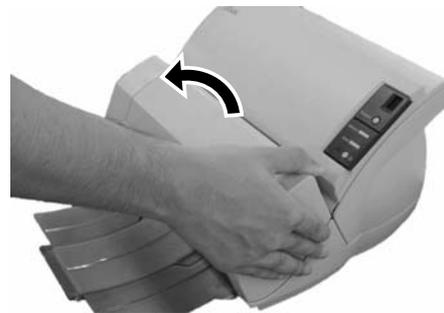
05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	143/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

7-3-5 Removing Jammed Documents

Remove the jammed document sheets in the following procedure.

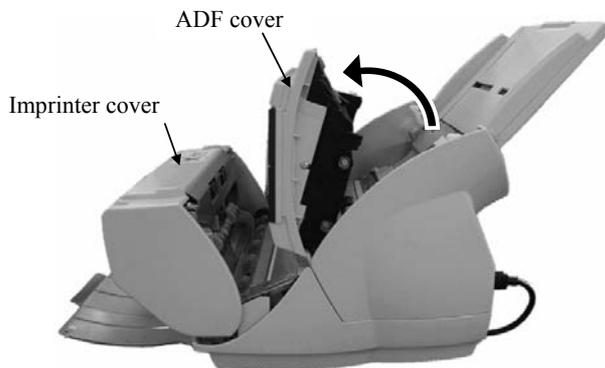
Do not forcefully pull out the document pages.

1. Remove the documents that are not jammed in the Imprinter or scanner feed from the ADF paper chute (Chute Unit).
2. Holding the right side of the Imprinter cover, pull open the cover turning it towards you.

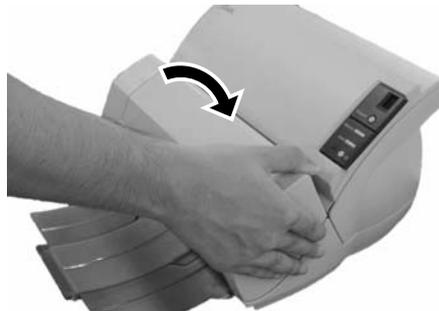


To open the ADF cover, first open the Imprinter cover before proceeding.

3. Open the ADF by pulling it back gently.



4. Carefully remove all jammed documents.
5. Close the ADF cover.
6. Close the Imprinter cover.



To close the Imprinter cover, be sure that the ADF cover is closed first before closing the Imprinter cover.

- Be careful not to pinch your fingers.
- Do not move the Imprinter or scanner while printing.
- When not using the Imprinter for a long period, remove the Print cartridge from the Imprinter and store it.
- Each time the Imprinter is turned On, some ink is initially consumed.
- Do not move the Imprinter with the Imprinter already installed. The Imprinter may become damaged.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	144/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

7-4 Daily Maintenance of the Imprinter

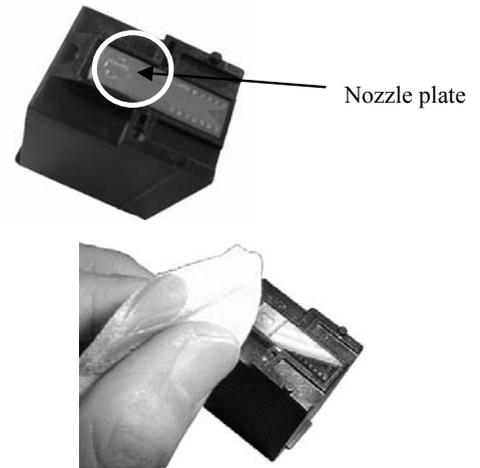
7-4-1 Cleaning the Print cartridge

Poor quality prints may occur due to blocked ink emission holes in the nozzle. Leaving the Imprinter unused for long periods can also cause emission holes to become blocked. When the emission holes are blocked, clean the nozzle surface of the print cartridge.

For cleaning, use a dry lint-free cloth (Do NOT use tissue), and gently wipe any dirt and stains off the nozzle's surface.

1. Press the  button to turn off the scanner.
 2. Remove the Print cartridge (Refer to Section 7-3-4).
- When cleaning, be careful not to touch directly by hand the Nozzle plate or any of the contact parts on the cartridge.
3. Gently wipe any dirt and stains on the nozzle surface.
 4. Make sure that all dirt and stains are removed, before installing the print cartridge. (Refer to Section 7-3-4).

When installing or replacing the Print cartridge, be careful not to insert it out place.



7-4-2 Cleaning the Imprinter

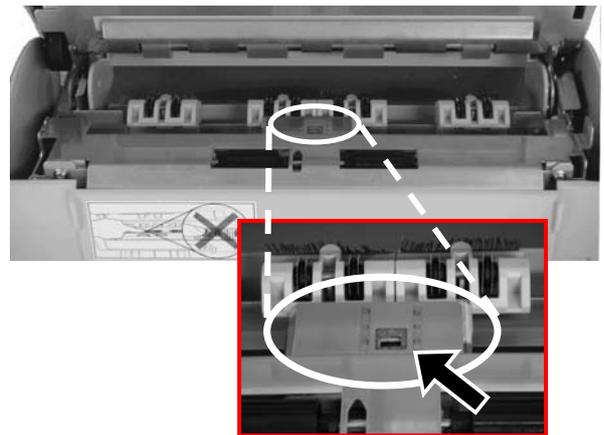
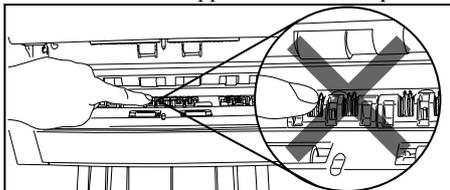
After frequent use, ink will begin to accumulate or stick to the base of the Imprinter, which can soil printouts. Always maintain the Imprinter base clean.

To assure high quality print outs and long use of the Imprinter, adopt a daily maintenance procedure as given below.

- When cleaning, wipe off gently all dust and ink on the Imprinter base.
- If the ink has dried, wipe it lightly with a water-moistened cloth.

1. Press the  button to turn off the scanner.
2. Open the Print cartridge cover and remove the Print cartridge (Refer to Section 7-3-4).
3. Open the Imprinter cover.
4. Clean the print cartridge holder base by wiping off any dirt and dust with a lint-free cloth.

When cleaning, be careful not to touch the metal wheels located behind the upper rollers on the print cartridge cover.



5. Check that the dirt is wiped off, and then close the Imprinter cover.
6. Reinstall the Print cartridge and close the Print cartridge cover (Refer to Section 7-3-4).

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	145/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

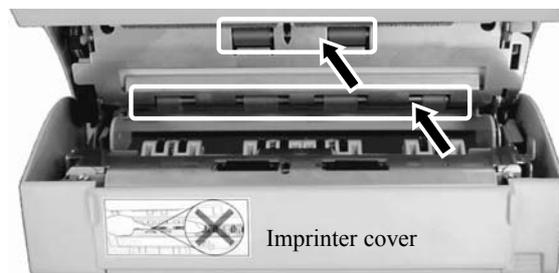
7-4-3 Cleaning the Imprinter rollers

When ink or dust from paper is stuck on the Imprinter feed roller surfaces, documents may not be fed smoothly. To prevent feed problems, clean the rollers' surfaces regularly.

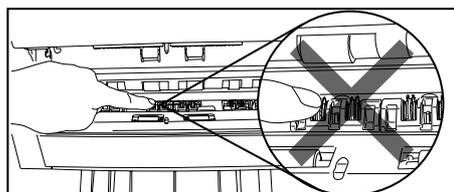
Recommended cleaning cycle is every 1,000 sheets. Actual cleaning cycle may be shorter depending on usage and documents.

1. Open the Imprinter cover.
2. Clean the roller surfaces with a lint-free cloth moistened with cleaning fluid (ethyl alcohol or isopropyl alcohol) by wiping off all dirt and dust.

Clean the lower rubber rollers (total of six) by holding down both the [Scan] and [Send to] buttons on the front panel of the scanner and rotating the rollers.

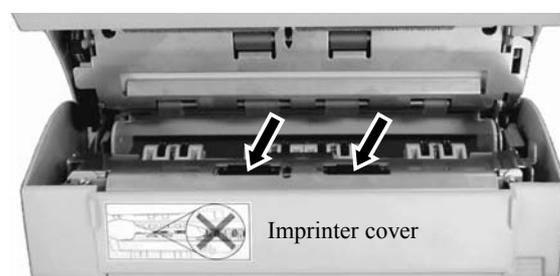


When cleaning, be careful not to touch the metal wheels located behind the upper rollers on the print cartridge holder cover.



3. Clean the Plastic rollers.
- Also, clean the two black plastic rollers on the inner side of the Imprinter cover.

Rotate the rollers with your fingers gently and wipe off any dirt or dust from the roller surface with a lint-free cloth moistened with cleaning fluid (ethyl alcohol or isopropyl alcohol).



4. Confirm that all dirt and dust have been removed from the rollers. Close the Imprinter cover.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	146/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

7-5 Replacing the Maintenance parts for the Imprinter

This chapter describes warnings and cautions, how to replace covers and maintenance parts for the Imprinter to ensure the normal operations.

7-5-1 For Safety operation

Preventative maintenance is recommended on the Imprinter at the following intervals.

Item	Maintenance cycle
Periodic maintenance	Every 12 month, or at the periodic maintenance of the connected scanner

Notes at replacement work

- Clean the place where replacement work is conducted.
- Be sure to follow the described procedures. Never loosen the non-disassembly screws.
- Avoid loss of the removed parts.
- Check the quantities and shapes of the parts after replacement.
- Follow the removal procedure in reverse for the installation procedure.

CAUTION

Machine damage

Static Electricity charged human body due to rubbed clothes may cause the damage of electric element.
When repairing the substrate as a System Board or a Main Control Board, put a wrist strap or use a conductive mat to avoid ESD.

Injury

Be careful not to get your fingers, hair, clothes or accessories caught in a moving part. It may cause injury.

Perform the periodic maintenance when that of the image scanner is conducted.
Refer to [Section 7-4 "Daily maintenance"](#) for details of cleaning.

- Perform the periodic maintenance at the same time when it is performed for the image scanner.
- Refer to [Section 7-4 "Daily Maintenance"](#) for how to clean in detail.

7-5-2 Maintenance tool

Special tools to maintain this Imprinter are shown in the table below.

No.	Tools	Remarks	When to use
1	Phillips screwdriver	M3, M4 screws	
2	Small flat-blade screwdriver		Removing E ring, lever switch
3	Plier		Removing clamps
4	Alcohol	Ethyl alcohol	Cleaning
5	Spring gauge	500g	Adjusting belt tension

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	147/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

7-5-3 Removing / Installing the Holder Lever

NOTICE

Refer to Section 7-6-8 for the part number of the replacement part.

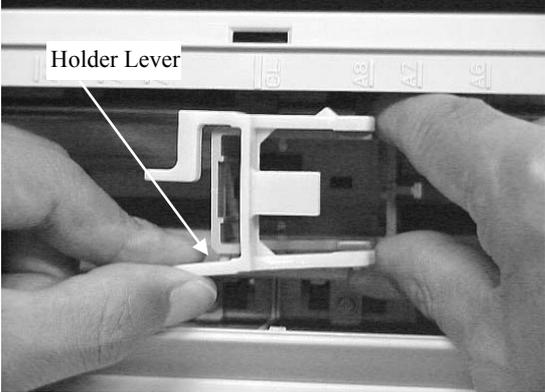
<Removing>

Follow the procedure below.

1. Open the ink cover
2. Remove the Print cartridge.
3. Open the supporting point of the Holder Lever which fixes the Holder Lever and remove it.

<Installing>

Follow the procedure above in reverse.



7-5-4 Removing / Installing the Pinch ASSY

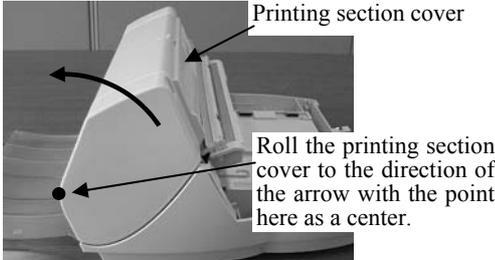
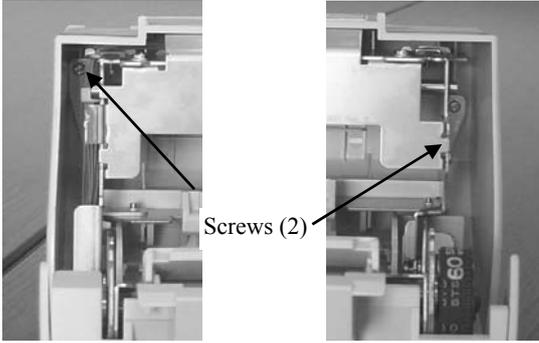
NOTICE

Refer to Section 7-6-10 for the part number of the replacement part.

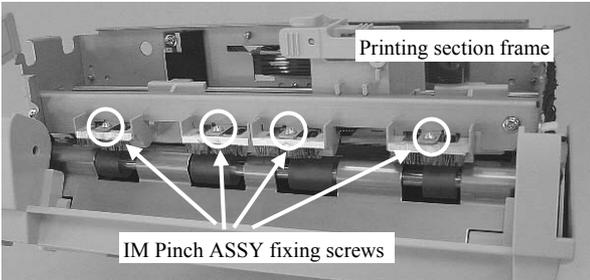
<Removing>

Follow the procedure below.

1. Referring to the step (1) in Section 4-7, detach the scanner from the Imprinter.
2. Remove the printing section cover in the procedure below.
 - Open the printing section.
 - Remove the 2 screws (photo on the right) inside of the printing section cover.
 - Close the printing section, roll the printing section cover as shown in the photo below, and remove it.



3. Remove (4) Pinch ASSY fixing screws, open the printing section frame, and remove the Pinch ASSY.



<Installing>

Follow the procedure above in reverse by referring to the picture below.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	148/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

7-5-5 Removing / Installing the Junction PCA

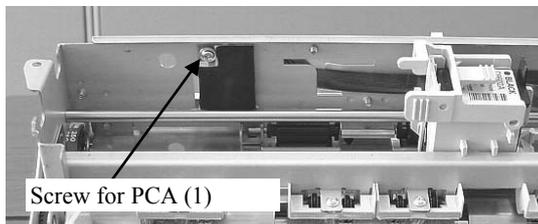
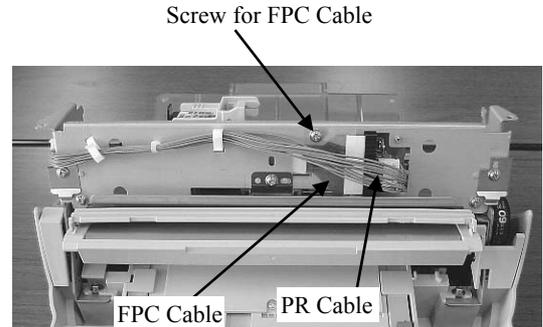
NOTICE

Refer to [Section 7-6-3](#) for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removing>

Follow the procedure below.

1. Referring to the step (1) in [Section 4-7](#), detach the scanner from the Imprinter.
2. Referring to the step (2) in [Section 7-5-4](#), remove the printing section cover.
3. Remove the screw for the FPC Cable, then remove the FPC Cable and PR Cable from the Junction PCA.
4. Remove a screw for the Junction PCA and remove the Junction PCA.



<Installing>

Follow the procedure above in reverse.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Oakda	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL							
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	Rev		DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada			

7-5-6 Removing / Installing the Holder ASSY, FPC Cable

NOTICE

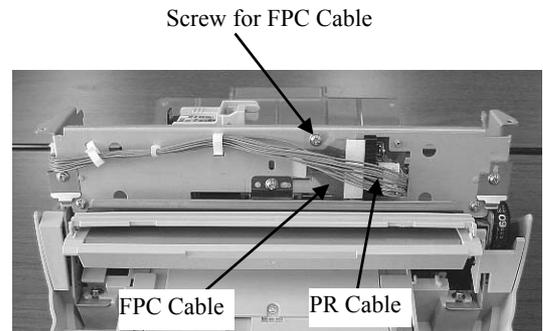
Refer to [Section 7-6-7](#) (Holder ASSY) and [7-6-9](#) (FPC Cable) for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removing>

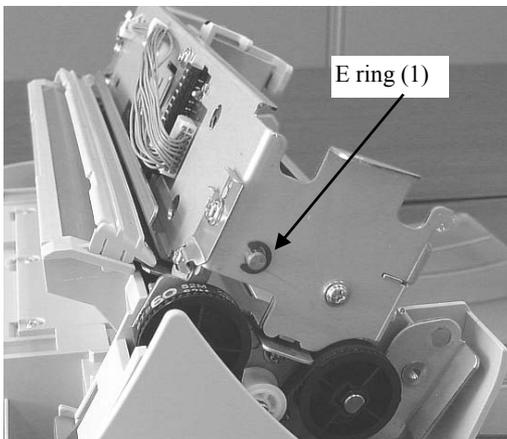
Follow the procedure below.

1. Referring to the step (1) in [Section 4-7](#), detach the scanner from the Imprinter.
2. Referring to the step (2) in [Section 7-5-4](#), remove the printing section cover.
3. Disconnect the PR Cable from the connector. Remove a screw for the FPC Cable, then disconnect the FPC Cable from the connector.

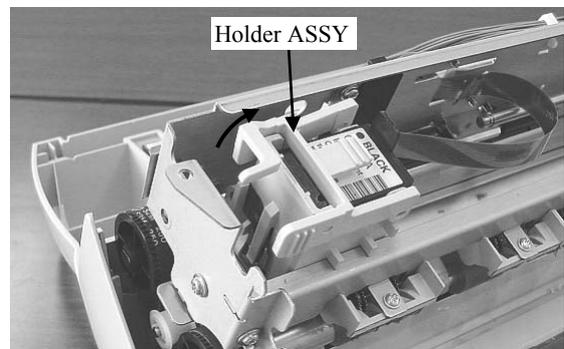
Unreeve the FPC Cable through the frame hole to the Holder ASSY side (other side in the photo on the right).



4. Pull an E ring (photo below) out of the plate at the frame side.



5. Move the Holder ASSY to the position shown in the photo on the right (refer to [Section 7-3-2](#) for how to remove the Paper Guides), then pull the axis out of the Holder ASSY. Rotate the Holder ASSY a bit as shown on the right and remove it from the rail, then pull it out.



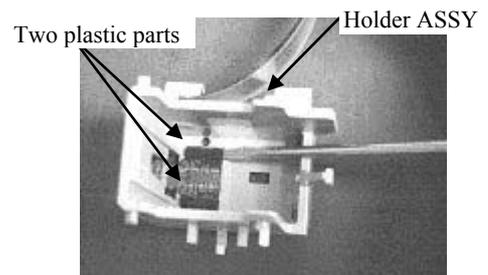
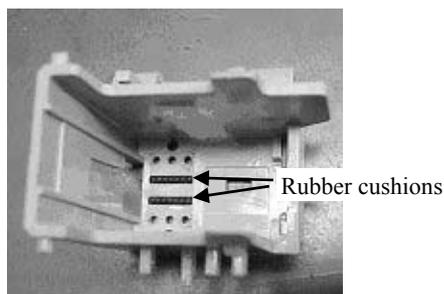
<Installing>

Follow the above procedure in reverse.

<When removing FPC Cable, proceed to the following procedure>

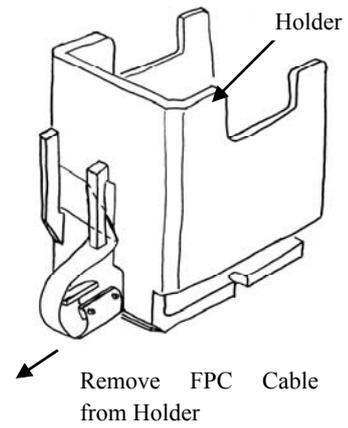
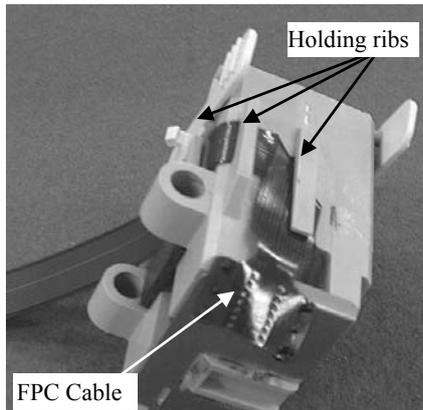
6. Remove two plastic parts from the Holder with a small flat-blade screwdriver.

Note: Be careful not to lose rubber cushions on the bottom of the Holder.



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	150/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

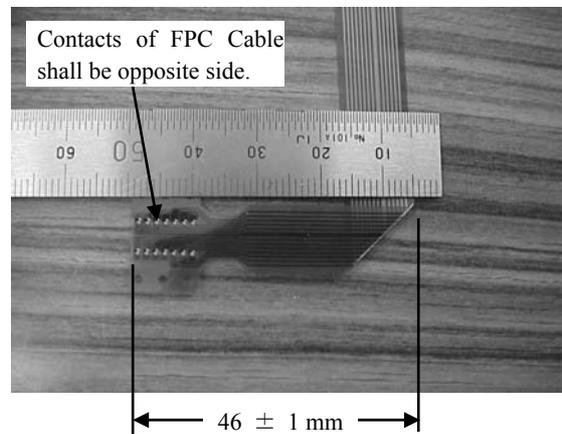
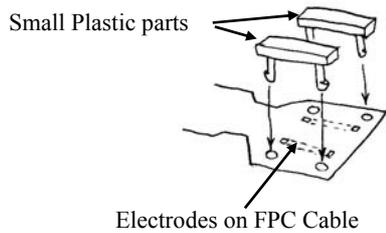
- Remove one end of the FPC Cable from the Holder as shown in the right figure.
- Remove the FPC Cable from all cable holding ribs.



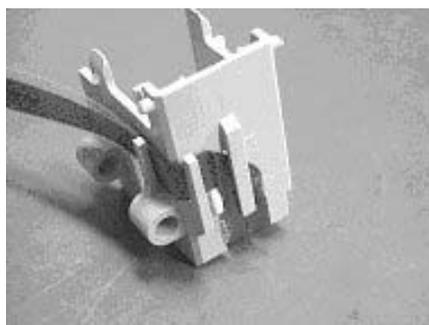
<Mounting>

Follow the above procedure in reverse by taking care of the following points.

- Fold the new FPC Cable as shown in the right figure.
- Small plastic parts come with the FPC Cable. Insert two small plastic parts into the holes of the FPC Cable near electrodes.



- Route the new FPC Cable as shown in the following figure.



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6	
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	151/176
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION				
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

7-5-7 Removing / Installing the Control PCA (for Imprinter)

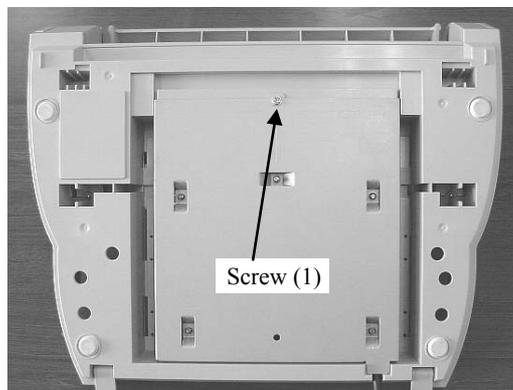
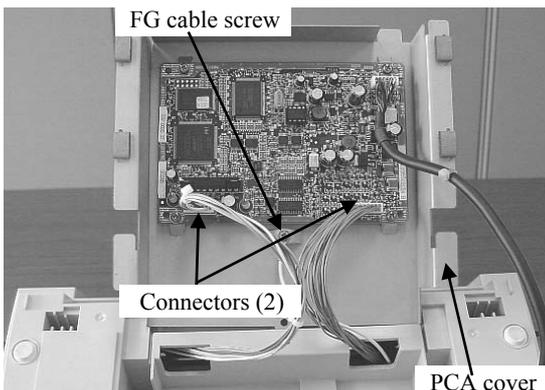
NOTICE

Refer to Section 7-6-2 for the part number of the replacement part.

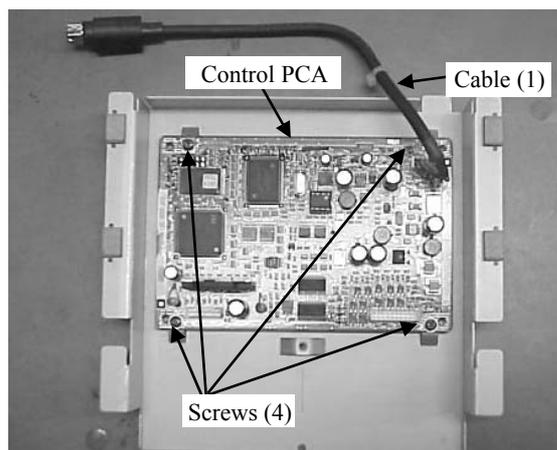
<Removing>

Follow the procedure below.

1. Remove a screw from the rear of the Imprinter (photo on the right).
2. Open the PCA cover and remove a screw for FG cable. Disconnect 2 connectors (photo below) and remove the PCA cover.



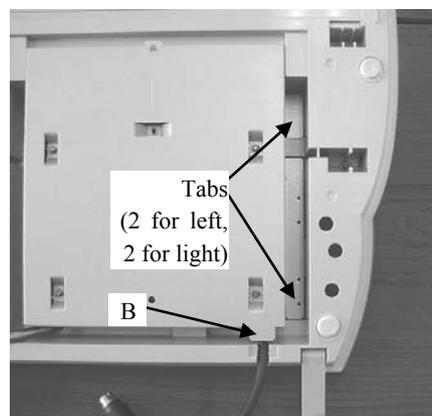
3. Remove a cable and 4 screws from the Control PCA and remove the Control PCA.



<Installing>

Follow the above procedure in reverse. When installing the PCA cover especially, place the cover with noticing the following, and slide it to mount.

1. Put the tabs (4 in total) of the PCB cover under the frame.
2. Place the cable band inside of the frame (B in the photo on the right)



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL						
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.			
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	Rev		DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PAGE
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada		
PFU LIMITED													

7-5-8 Removing / Installing the Sensor

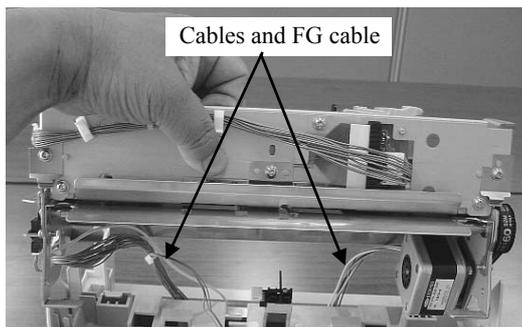
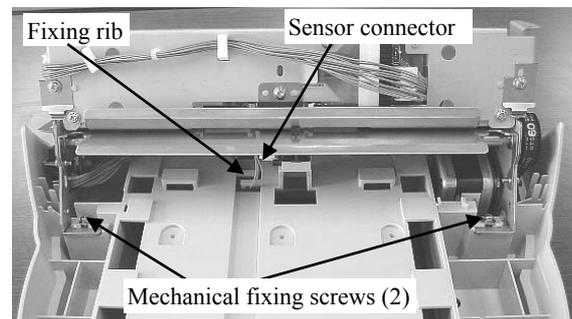
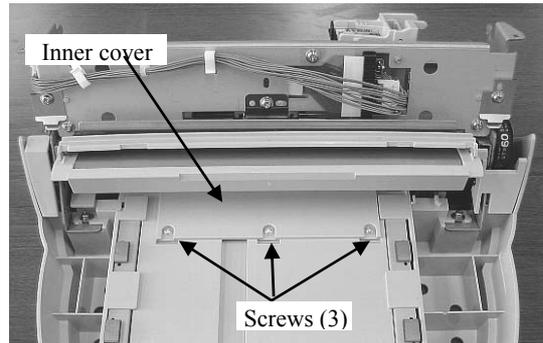
NOTICE

Refer to [Section 7-6-1](#) for the part number of the replacement part.

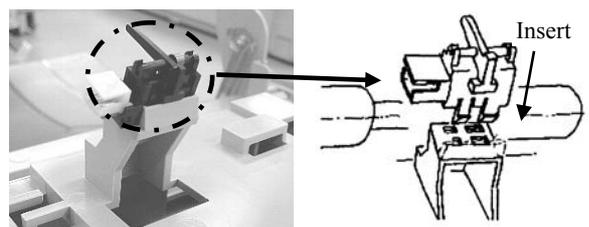
<Removing>

Follow the procedure below.

1. Referring to the step (1) in [Section 4-7](#), detach the scanner from the Imprinter.
2. Referring to the step (2) in [Section 7-5-4](#), remove the printing section cover.
3. Referring to the steps (1) and (2) in [Section 7-5-7](#), remove the PCA cover.
4. Remove 3 screws on the Imprinter (photo on the right) and remove the inner cover.
5. Disconnect the connector of the Sensor and remove the cable of this Sensor from the cable fixing rib (photo on the right).
6. Remove 2 mechanical fixing screws (photo on the right). As this screw has a washer, be careful not to drop it. Pulling 2 cables connected to the Control PCA and an FG cable out of the frame hole, and remove the mechanical section by sliding it obliquely to your side.



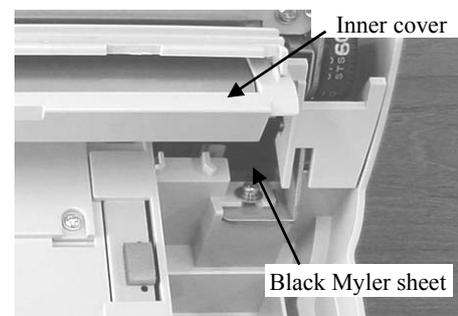
7. Unlatch the claw that holds the Sensor and remove the Sensor.



<Installing>

Follow the above procedure in reverse.

- Push in the Sensor firmly so that its claw is securely latched.
- Confirm that the Sensor lever moves smoothly after installation.
- When installing the inner cover, be sure that its black Myler sheet is aligned straight.
- When installing the mechanical section, push it obliquely downward until it bumps, then fix it.



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	153/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

7-5-9 Removing / Installing the Cover Open Sensor

NOTICE

Refer to [Section 7-6-13](#) for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removing>

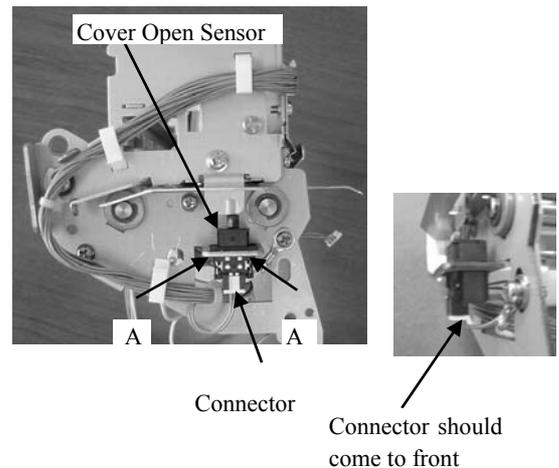
Follow the procedure below.

1. Referring to the step (1) in [Section 4-7](#), detach the scanner from the Imprinter.
2. Referring to the step (2) in [Section 7-5-4](#), remove the printing section cover.
3. Referring to the steps (1) and (2) in [Section 7-5-7](#), remove the PCA cover.
4. Referring to the steps (4) to (6) in [Section 7-5-8](#), remove the inner cover and the mechanical section.
5. Disconnect the connector connected to the Cover Open Sensor, and pinching the Cover Open Sensor claws (A), remove the Cover Open Sensor upward (photo on the right).

<Installing>

Follow the above procedure in reverse by noticing the following items.

- When mounting the Cover Open Sensor, insert it so as its connector to come to your side. You cannot insert it in reverse.
- When installing the mechanical section, push it obliquely downward until it bumps, then fix it.



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	154/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

7-5-10 Removing / Installing the LF Motor

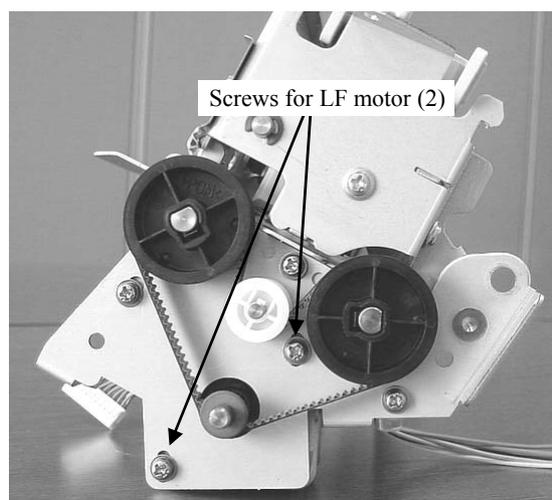
NOTICE

Refer to Section 7-6-6 for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removing>

Follow the procedure below.

1. Referring to the step (1) in Section 4-7, detach the scanner from the Imprinter.
2. Referring to the step (2) in Section 7-5-4, remove the printing section cover.
3. Referring to the steps (1) and (2) in Section 7-5-7, remove the PCA cover.
4. Referring to the steps (4) to (6) in Section 7-5-8, remove the inner cover and the mechanical section.
5. Remove 2 screws for the LF motor, and remove the LF motor together with the belt.



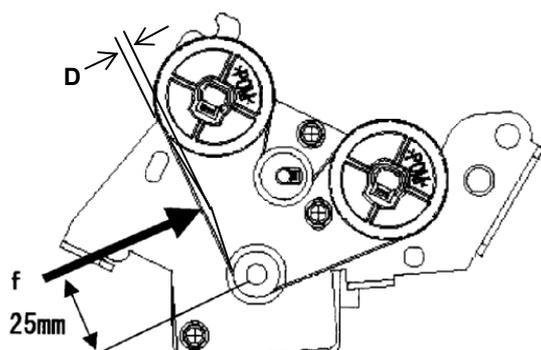
<Installing>

Follow the above procedure in reverse.

When tightening the screws for the LF motor, adjust the belt tension so that the force (f) and the belt deflection (D) are the following values.

D=3mm

F=300±40gf



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)	
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL	
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6	
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		CUST.	
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	155/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai			

7-5-11 Removing / Installing the PR Cable

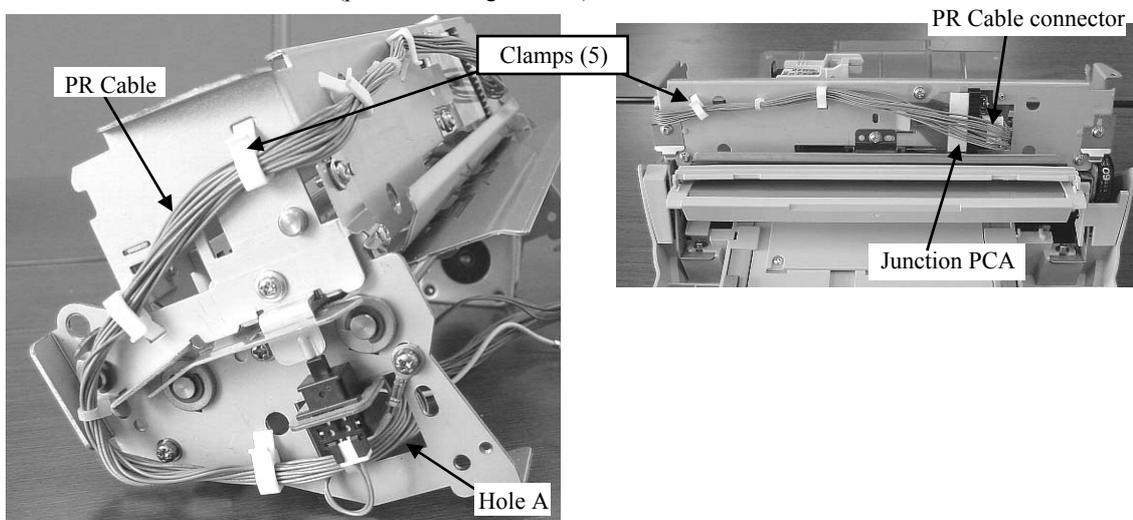
NOTICE

Refer to Section 7-6-4 for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removing>

Follow the procedure below.

1. Referring to the step (1) in Section 4-7, detach the scanner from the Imprinter.
2. Referring to the step (2) in Section 7-5-4, remove the printing section cover.
3. Referring to the steps (1) and (2) in Section 7-5-7, remove the PCA cover.
4. Referring to the steps (4) to (6) in Section 7-5-8, remove the inner cover and the mechanical section.
5. Pull the PR Cable out of the hole A. Remove it from all the cable clamps (5) that hold the PR Cable. Then Remove the PR Cable from the Junction PCA (photo on the right below).



<Installing>

Follow the above procedure in reverse.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	156/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

7-5-12 Removing / Installing the Felt

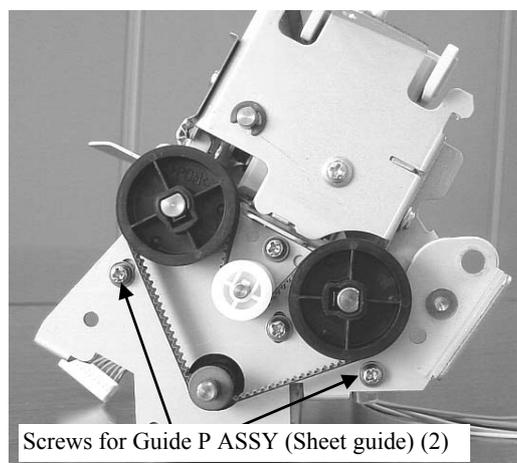
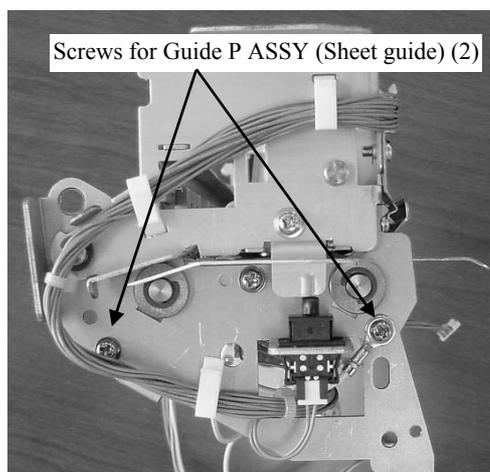
NOTICE

Refer to [Section 7-6-5](#) for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removing>

Follow the procedure below.

1. Referring to the step (1) in [Section 4-7](#), detach the scanner from the Imprinter.
2. Referring to the step (2) in [Section 7-5-4](#), remove the printing section cover.
3. Referring to the steps (1) and (2) in [Section 7-5-7](#), remove the PCA cover.
4. Referring to the steps (4) to (6) in [Section 7-5-8](#), remove the inner cover and the mechanical section.
5. Remove screws (4 in total, photos below) for the Guide P ASSY (Sheet guide).



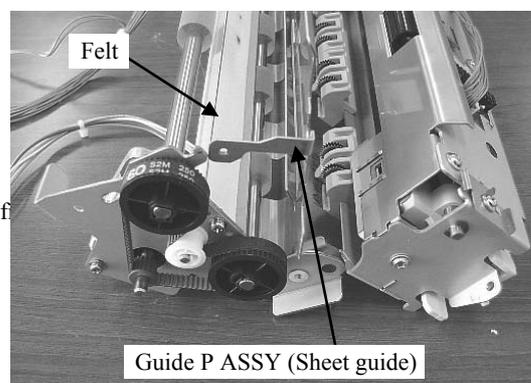
6. Lift up the Guide P ASSY (Sheet guide) and replace the Felt. It is not glued.

<Installing>

Follow the above procedure in reverse.

Either side of the Felt can be surface.

When mounting the Guide P ASSY (Sheet guide), fix it with pressing it f



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	157/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

7-5-13 Removing / Installing the Thumb Screw and Stopper

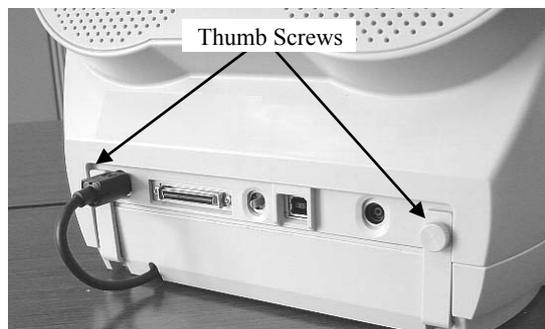
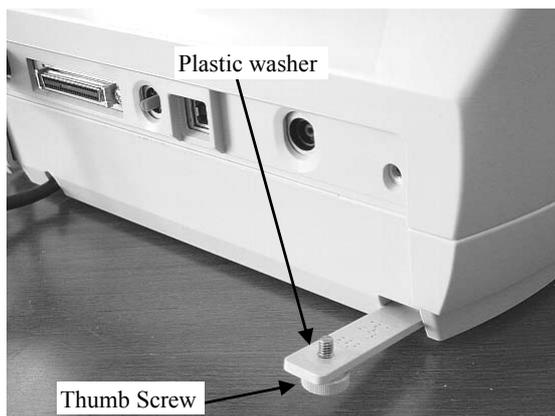
NOTICE

Refer to [Section 7-6-11](#) (Stopper) and [7-6-12](#) (Thumb Screw) for the parts numbers of the replacement parts.

<Removing>

Follow the procedure below.

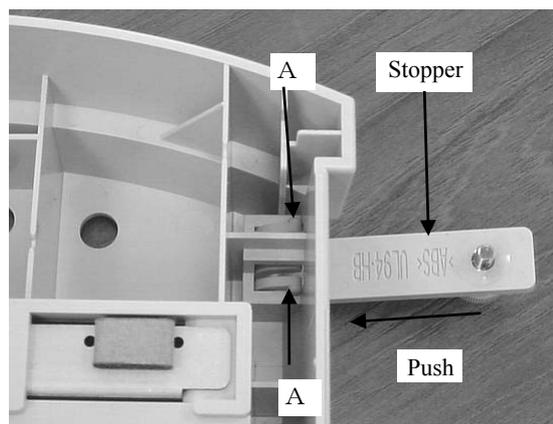
1. Loosen the Thumb Screws at rear of the Imprinter.
2. Open the fixing tab, remove the plastic washer that prevents the Thumb Screw from coming off, then remove the Thumb Screw.



3. Before removing the Stopper, detach the scanner from the Imprinter by referring to the step (1) in [Section 4-7](#). Then pinching the Stopper attaching section (A's in the photo on the right), push the Stopper to the direction of the arrow.

<Installing>

Follow the above procedure in reverse.



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6	
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	158/176
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION				
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

7-5-14 Removing / Installing the Guide Sheet

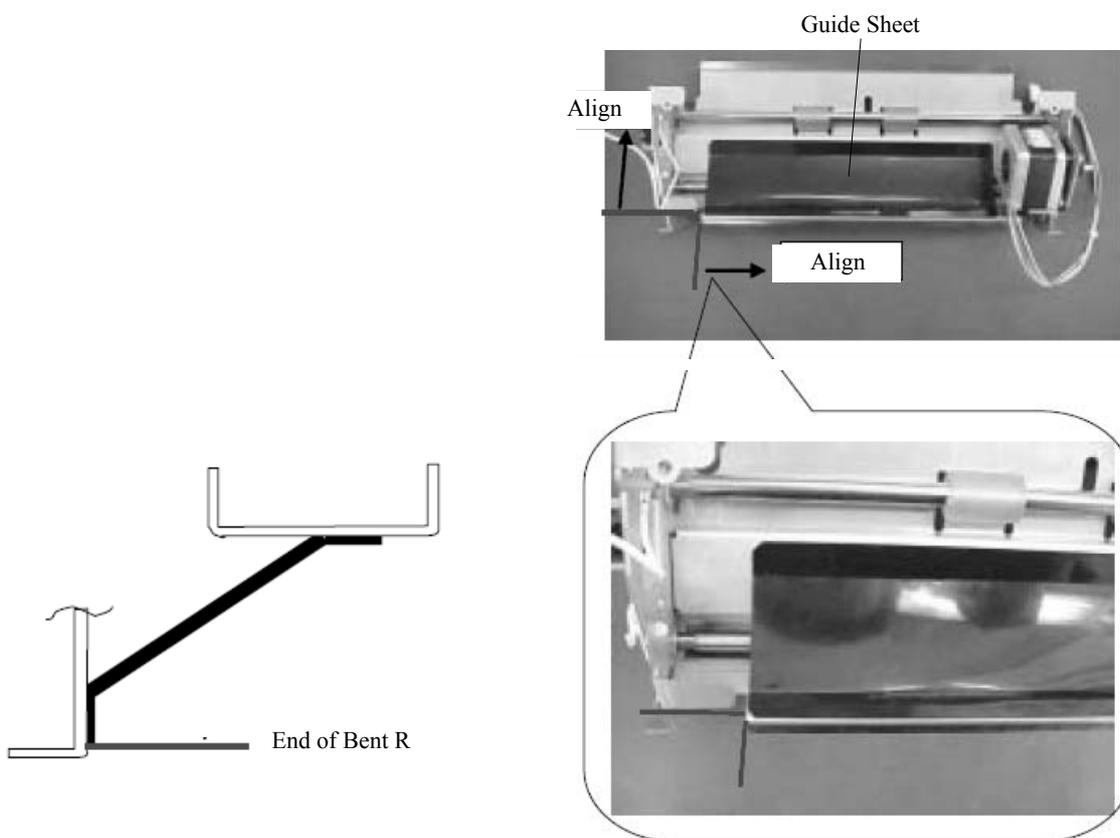
NOTICE

Refer to [Section 7-6-14](#) for the part number of the replacement part.

<Removing>

Follow the procedure below.

1. Referring to the step (1) in [Section 4-7](#), detach the scanner from the Imprinter.
2. Referring to the step (2) in [Section 7-5-4](#), remove the printing section cover.
3. Referring to the steps (1) and (2) in [Section 7-5-7](#), remove the PCA cover.
4. Referring to the steps (4) to (6) in [Section 7-5-8](#), remove the inner cover and the mechanical section.
5. Referring to the photo below, replace the Guide Sheet inside of the mechanical section.



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	159/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

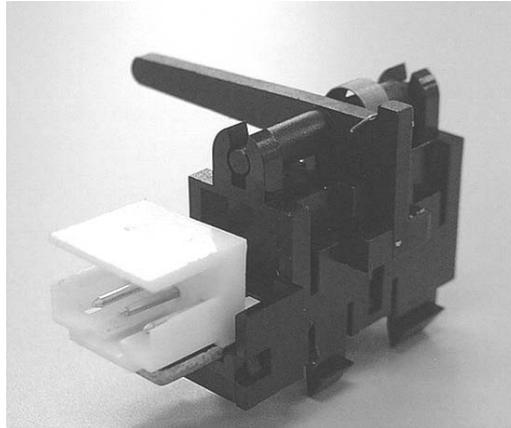
7-6 Maintenance Parts for Imprinter

POS	Description	Part number	Quantity		Reference for Appearance	Reference for Replacement
1	Sensor	PA03334-D060	1		<u>7-6-1</u>	<u>7-5-8</u>
2	Control PCA	PA03334-K960 PA03334-K965-02 PA03334-K966-07	1		<u>7-6-2</u>	<u>7-5-7</u>
3	Junction PCA	PA03334-K961	1		<u>7-6-3</u>	<u>7-5-5</u>
4	PR Cable	PA03289-F953	1		<u>7-6-4</u>	<u>7-5-11</u>
5	Felt	PA03289-F954	1		<u>7-6-5</u>	<u>7-5-12</u>
6	LF motor	PA03484-F911	1		<u>7-6-6</u>	<u>7-5-10</u>
7	Holder ASSY	PA03334-E955	1		<u>7-6-7</u>	<u>7-5-6</u>
8	Holder Lever	PA03334-F951		1	<u>7-6-8</u>	<u>7-5-3</u>
9	FPC Cable	PA03334-F911 PA03334-F952-02		1	<u>7-6-9</u>	<u>7-5-6</u>
10	Pinch ASSY	PA03334-E965	4		<u>7-6-10</u>	<u>7-5-4</u>
11	Stopper	PA03334-F958	2		<u>7-6-11</u>	<u>7-5-13</u>
12	Thumb Screw	PA03334-F959	2		<u>7-6-12</u>	<u>7-5-13</u>
13	Cover Open Sensor	PA49001-0377	1		<u>7-6-13</u>	<u>7-5-9</u>
14	Guide Sheet	PA03289-K910	1		<u>7-6-14</u>	<u>7-5-14</u>
15	Paper Guide	PA03289-Y470	2		<u>7-6-15</u>	<u>7-3-2</u>

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	160/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

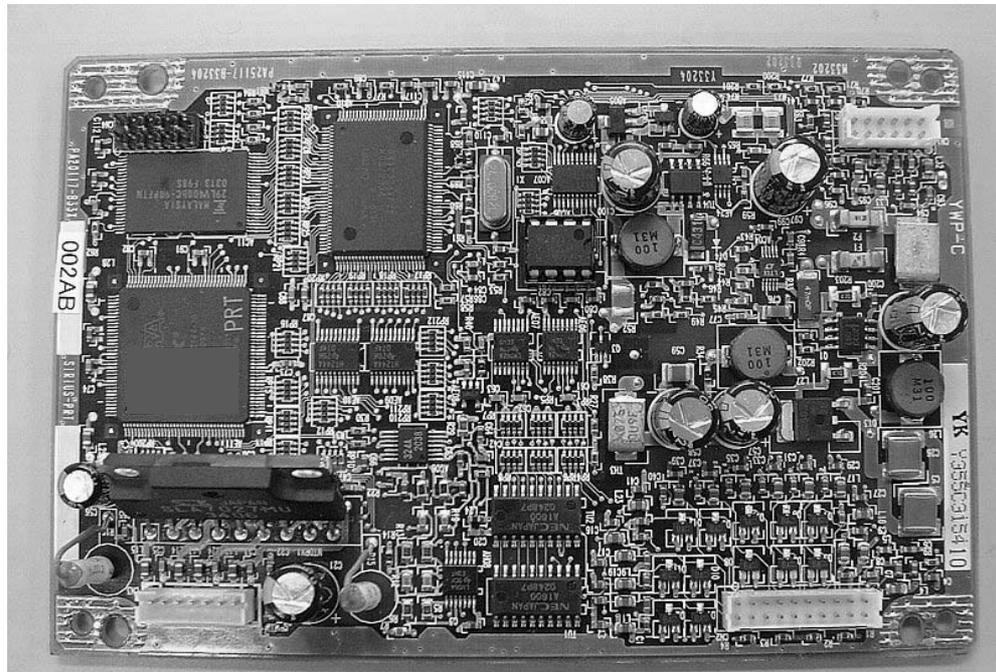
7-6-1 Sensor

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
Sensor	PA03334-D060	



7-6-2 Control PCA

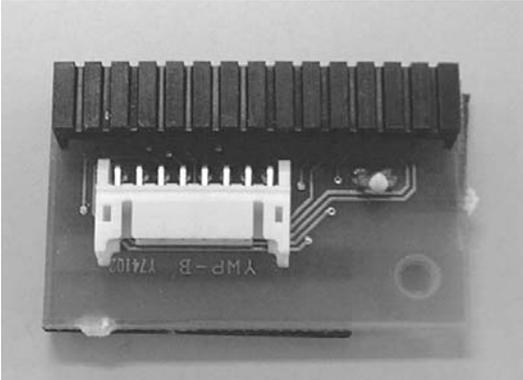
Description	Parts No.	Remarks
Control PCA	PA03334-K960	
	PA03334-K965 02	
	PA03334-K966 07	



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL						
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.			
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	REV		DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PAGE
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada		
							PFU LIMITED						

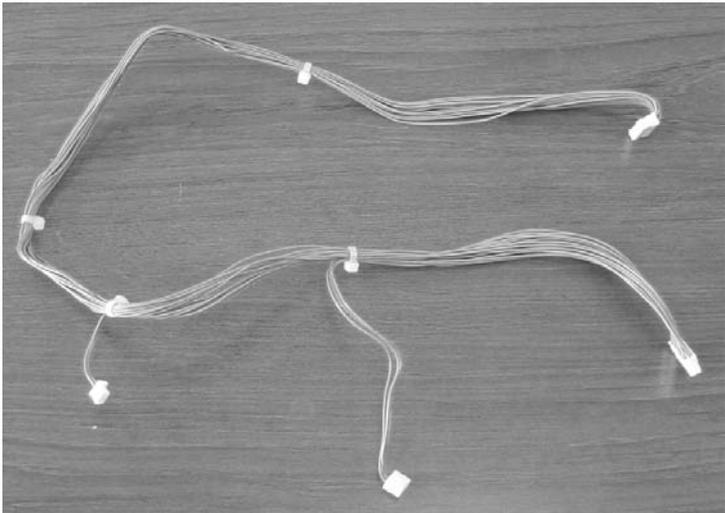
7-6-3 Junction PCA

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
Junction PCA	PA03334-K961	



7-6-4 PR Cable

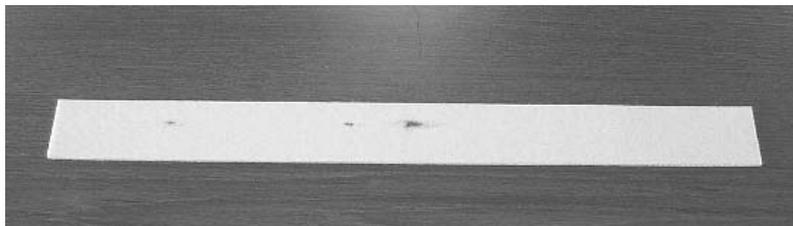
Description	Parts No.	Remarks
PR Cable	PA03289-F953	



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	162/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

7-6-5 Felt

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
Felt	PA03289-F954	247 x 25mm



7-6-6 LF Motor

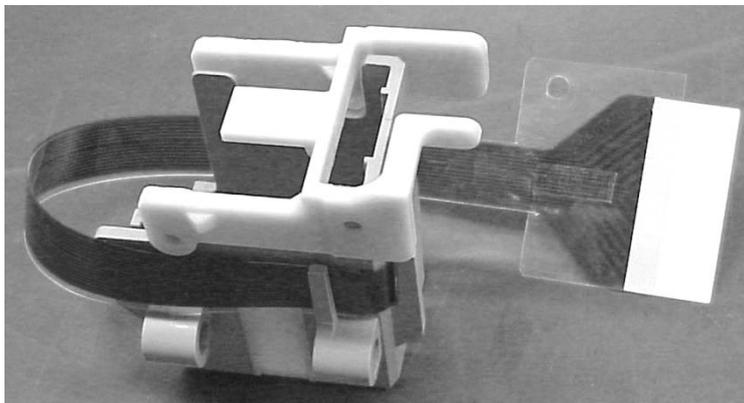
Description	Parts No.	Remarks
LF motor	PA03484-F911	



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	163/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

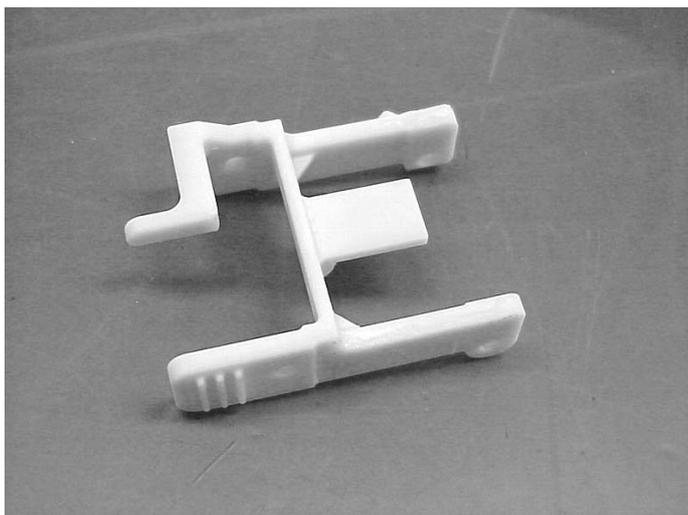
7-6-7 Holder ASSY

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
Holder ASSY	PA03334-E955	



7-6-8 Holder Lever

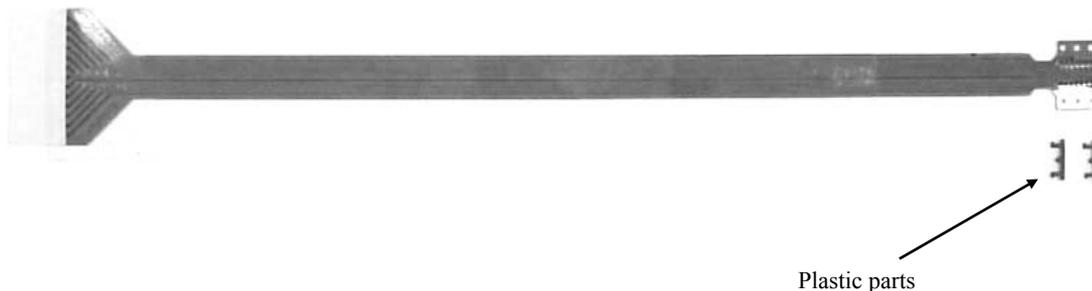
Description	Parts No.	Remarks
Holder Lever	PA03334-F951	



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6	
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	164/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

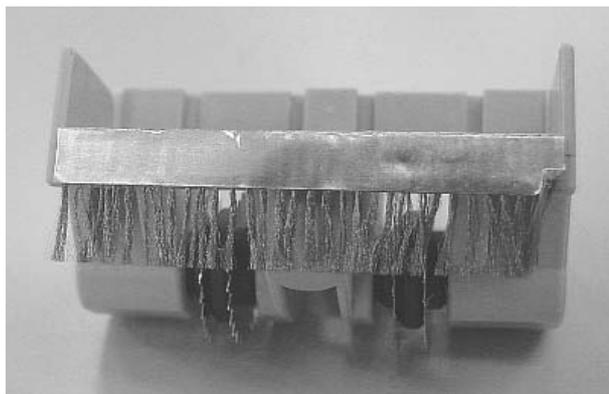
7-6-9 FPC Cable

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
FPC Cable	PA03334-F952	Two plastic parts included.



7-6-10 Pinch ASSY

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
Pinch ASSY	PA03334-E965	



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL							
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	Rev		DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada			

7-6-11 Stopper

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
Stopper	PA03334-F958	



7-6-12 Thumb Screw

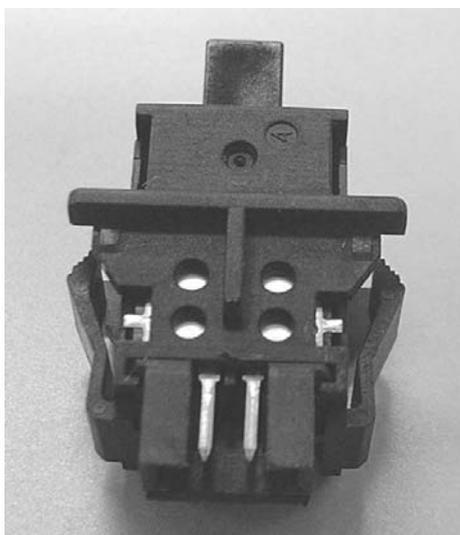
Description	Parts No.	Remarks
Thumb Screw	PA03334-F959	



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	166/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

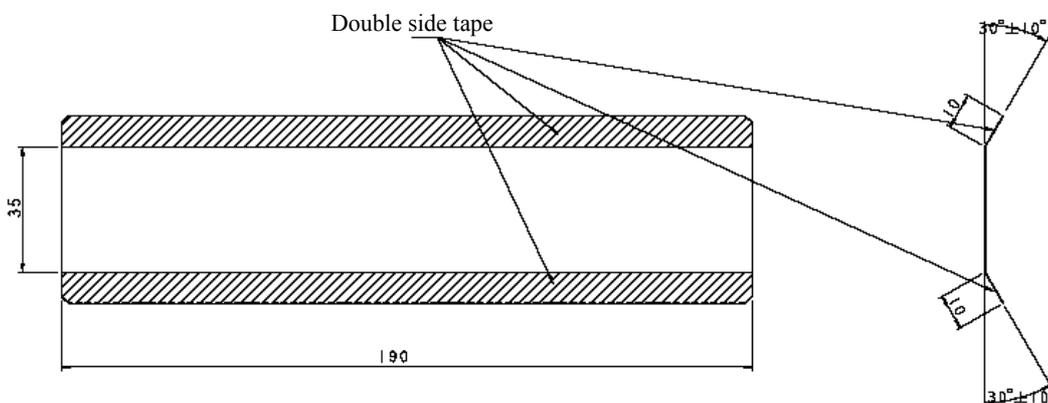
7-6-13 Cover Open Sensor

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
Cover Open Sensor	PA49001-0377	



7-6-14 Guide Sheet

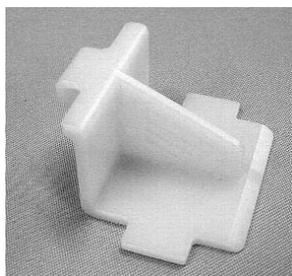
Description	Parts No.	Remarks
Guide Sheet	PA03289-K910	



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL							
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	Rev		DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada			

7-6-15 Paper Guide

Description	Parts No.	Remarks
Paper Guide	PA03289-Y470	



05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	168/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

Appendix A Definition of Scanner and Camera Properties

The following describes scanner driver setting that is excerpted from TWAIN driver (ST1 version) manual and modified for fi-5120C.

A.1 Displaying Scanner and Camera Properties

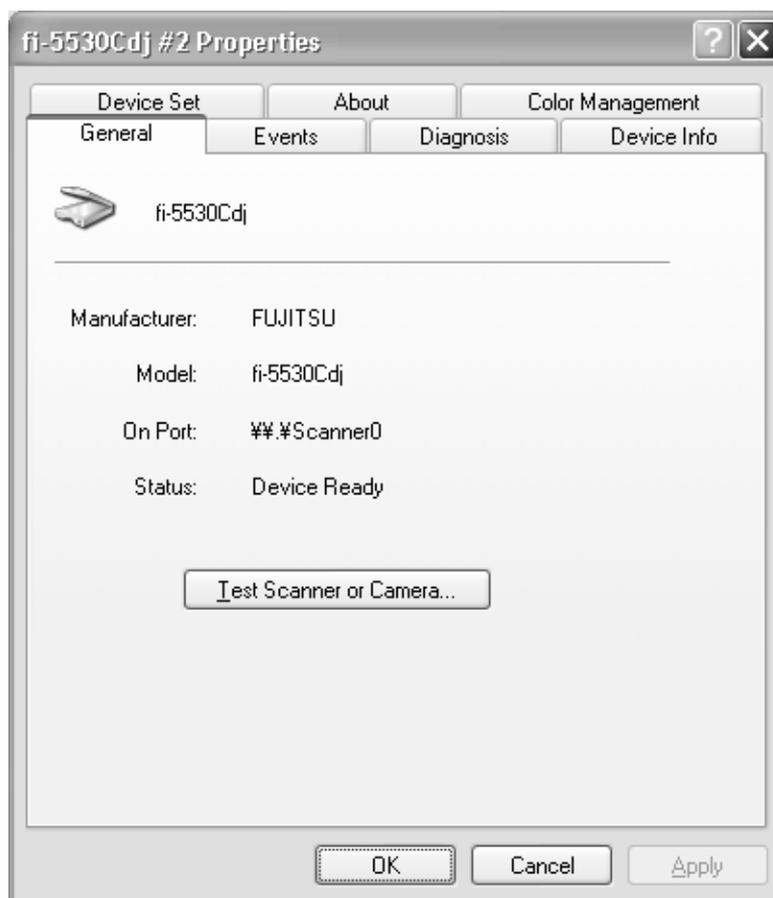
Double-click the [Scanner and Camera] icon on the [Control Panel] to display the corresponding Properties dialog box.

If the scanner driver has been properly installed, the icon of your scanner is displayed. Select the model name. And double-click the icon or select [Properties...] by using right-click. The Properties dialog box shown below is displayed.

In this dialog box, events can be set, the scanner can be checked, and information related to different kinds of related devices can be confirmed and set. An explanation of each tab folder and its use is below.

A.2 General Tab

General information on the driver for a connected scanner can be displayed, and the connection can be tested from this folder.

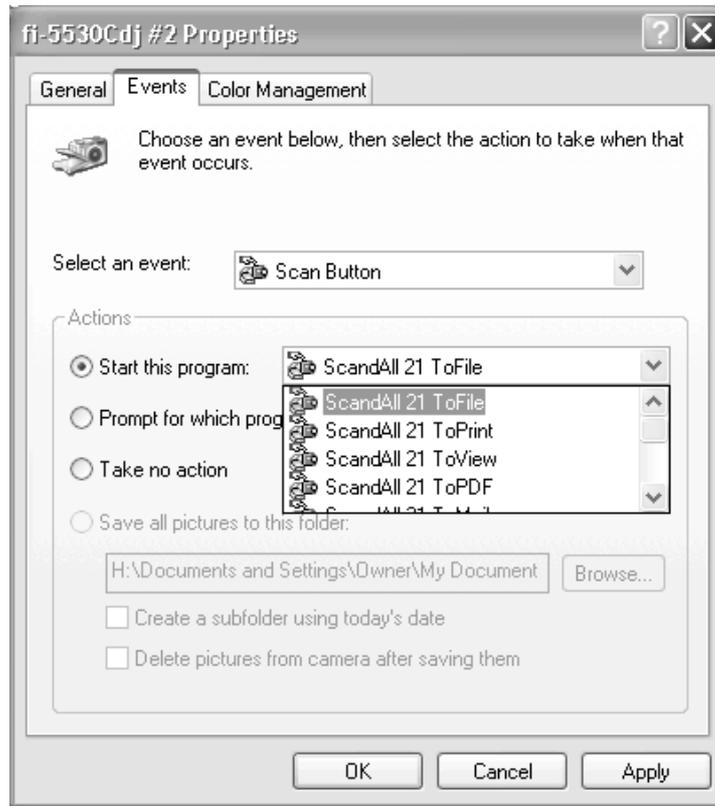


(The example screen is for fi-5530C)

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL							
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	Rev		DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada			

A.3 Events Tab

On the Events tab, an application can be specified to be started automatically by “Scanner events” such as “pushing buttons on the scanner”.



(The screen above is for Windows XP)

◆ **Select an event** (“Scanner event” in case of OS other than Windows XP)

Select a “Scanner event” from the list box to start an application. Select the item to set up from the following events.

"**Scan button**": When pushing the “Scan” button of the scanner.

"**Send to1-9**": When pushing the “SendTo” button of the scanner.

◆ **Actions** (displayed in case of Windows XP)

Select an action when the event selected [Select an event] occurs.

- **Start this program**: The application selected from the right list box starts when the event occurs.
- **Prompt for which program to run**: The window for selecting application appears when the event occurs.
- **Take no action**: Nothing starts even if the event occurs.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	170/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

◆ **Send to this application** (displayed in case of OS other than Windows XP)

Mark on the check box of an application to be started by the operation specified in the above Scanner events. Multiple applications can be specified. When two or more applications are specified, a dialog box appears to select one to be started is by the operation.

◆ **Disable device events** (displayed in case of OS other than Windows XP)

If these functions are not used, mark on this check box.

* If the above settings are not activated by clicking [OK] or [Apply], reboot the PC.

A.4 Diagnostic Tab

To perform more detailed diagnostic tests than those provided in the general tab folder, click the [Diagnose] button.

In Windows 2000 or Windows XP, only a user who has administrator authority can run these tests.



<The message after diagnosis>

“Hardware error not detected”

This means the diagnosis ends normally:

“General error detected. Diagnosis aborted”

This means the diagnosis ends abnormally:

Check the followings and try diagnosis again.

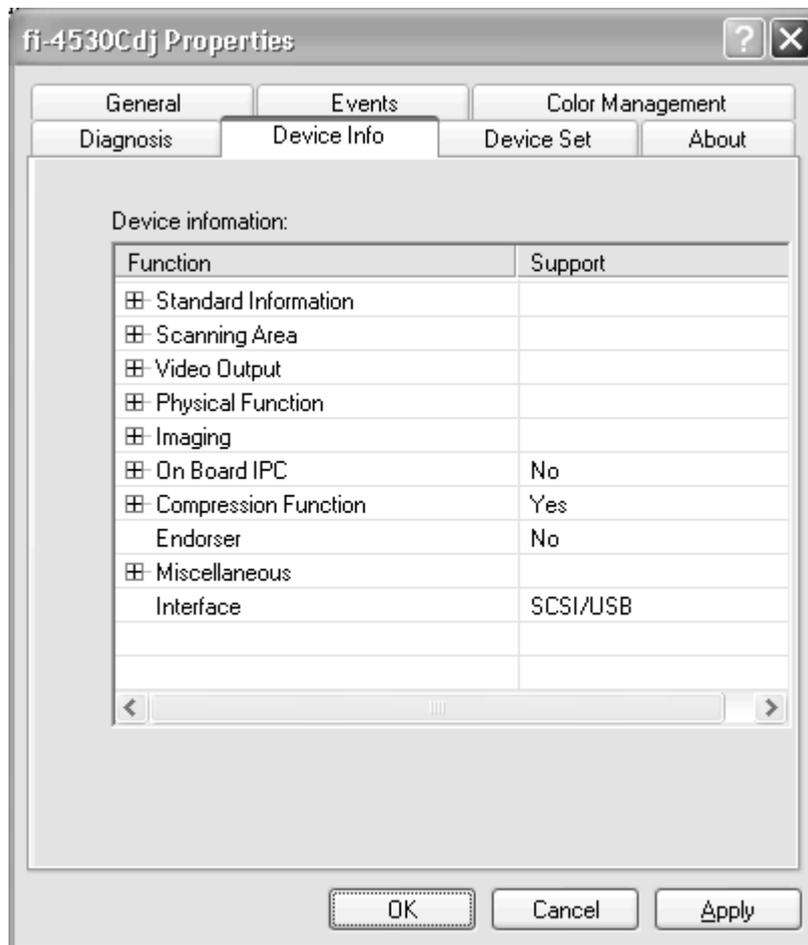
- 1) Is the scanner ON?
- 2) Is the scanner connected to the host PC?
- 3) Does the Function No. Display show an error? Go to Section 3.1 and follow the countermeasures corresponding to the error.

(The example screen is for fi-4110CU)

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	171/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

A.5 Device Information Tab

A list of the functions compatible with the selected scanner driver is displayed. The items displayed depend on the selected model of scanner. Only hardware functions are displayed. The functions realized by software are not displayed in this tab folder. Therefore, the displayed content may not match the content specified during reading. The contents of this tab folder are not displayed if the scanner driver is either currently in use or not connected to the computer. If they are not displayed, stop the application being used by the scanner driver or check the connection. Then, select this tab folder again to display the contents.



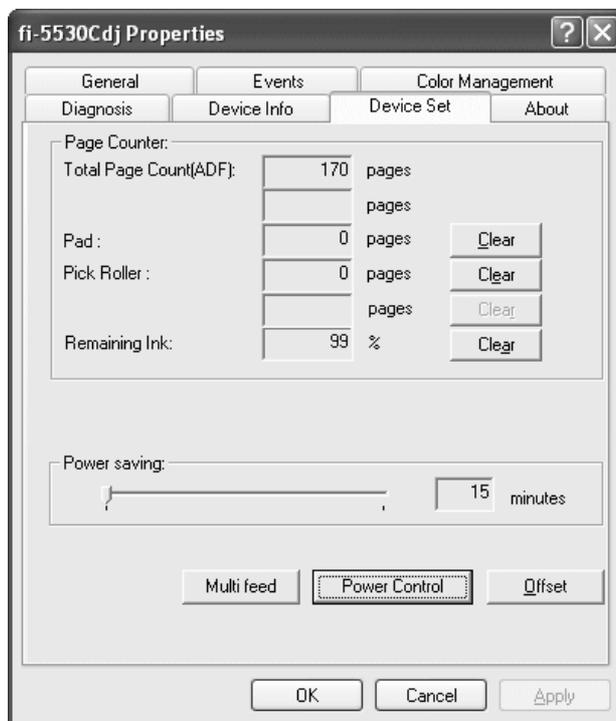
(The example screen is for fi-4530C)

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6	
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	172/176
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION				
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

A.6 Device Setup Tab

Information related to the operation and maintenance of the scanner driver can be displayed and set up. For some scanner models, some items cannot be set up (grayed out). Changing the setup activates the [Apply] button. The changed setup is reflected on the device only if the [Apply] button or [OK] button is clicked. The contents of this tab folder are not displayed if the scanner driver is either currently in use or not connected to the computer. If they are not displayed, stop the application being used by the scanner driver or check the connection. Then, select this tab folder again to display the data.

In Windows 2000 or Windows XP, only a user who has administrator authority can change the setup from this tab folder.



(The example screen is for fi-5530C)

◆ Page Counter

An approximate total numbers of pages ever read. An equivalent count of the pages scanned after consumables are replaced and remaining ink amount are also displayed.

To set the consumables counter to zero after replacing consumables, click the [Clear] button. This operation can be executed using the operation panel of the device.

<Counters supported by fi-5120C>

Total number of sheets ever scanned (ADF): Incremented after scanning 10 sheets

Pad counter : Incremented after scanning 500 sheets

Pick counter: Incremented after scanning 500 sheets

Remaining Ink: Shown in percentage.

Note:

Depending on some scanner models, once the [Device Set] tab appears, the operation panel is unable to be handled. In this case, close this dialog and turn the power ON/OFF of the scanner. After the scanner setup, the operation panel is able to be handled.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	173/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

When using a scanner, the following message may be displayed.



If this message appears, replace consumables following the instructions below.

< If replacing consumables immediately >

1. Check [This message not display again].
2. In cases where consumables are replaced after completing all documents being scanned, click [Ignore]. In cases where scanning is stopped for an immediate replacement, click [Cancel].
3. Following [Section 1-7](#), replace the consumables.
4. Select [Page counter] from [Device setup], click [Clear] button to reset the consumables counter.

Note: When [This message not display again.] is marked, the message will not appear until the consumable counter is reset and it reaches the specified value (Pad: 45,000 sheets, Pick roller: 95,000sheets).

< If replacing later (immediate replacement is impossible) >

1. If it is not necessary to display this message again, check [This message not display again]*. If it is necessary to display this message again after scanning xxx pages, check [Warns again after scanning xxx pages].
2. If the scanning is continued, click [Ignore] and close the message. If the scanning is stopped, click [Cancel] and close the message.
3. Replace consumables as soon as possible or when this message appears next time.
4. After the replacement, click [Clear] of [Device Setup] under [Page Counter] to reset the consumables counter.

(* If [This message not display again] is checked, this message will not appear before the consumables counter is reset.)

◆ **Power saving:**

Specify when the lamp turns off. This is the elapsed time after a scan is complete.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	174/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

◆ **[Multi feed] button**

Use this to specify multi feed detection area.

Normally Multi feed detection will monitor paper overlap over the whole area of the document. This will lead to certain documents such as postcards being mistakenly detected as multi feed because some portion of the document is pasted with photographs or stamps. When scanning these kinds of documents, you can specify an exact detection area to prevent mis-detection.

Click on the button and the following screen will appear.

Enable (Detection Area Selection)

Vertically select an area where multi feed detection will or will not be conducted. Choose wither “Select area for applying Multi feed Detection” or “Select area for not applying Multi feed detection”.

- Select area for applying Multi feed Detection:

Select an area for multi feed detection.

- Select area for not applying Multi feed Detection:

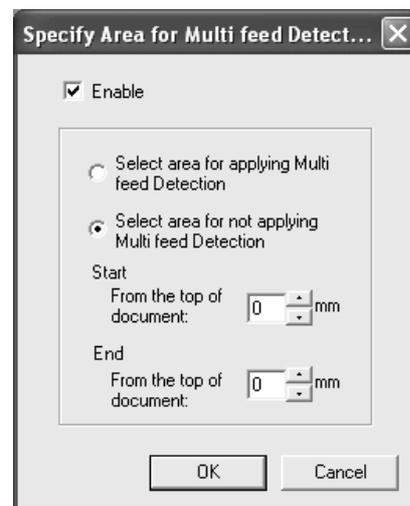
Select an area not to be detected.

- Start

Set start position as distance from the document’s top page.
(Possible values: 0-510mm with Start Position <End Position)

- End

Set end position as distance from the document’s top page.
(Possible values: 0-510mm with Start Position <End Position)



◆ **[Power Control] button**

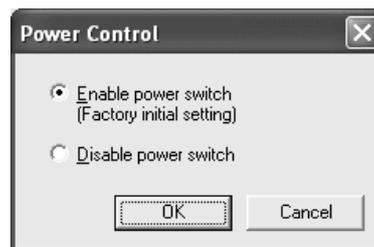
Enable/Disable the scanner’s power switch.

- Enable Power Switch

Scanner power switch is enabled.
The scanner can be turned ON/OFF by the power switch.

- Disable Power Switch

Scanner power switch is disabled.
The scanner will be turned ON/OFF by connecting/disconnecting the power supply.
(Power button will no longer work).

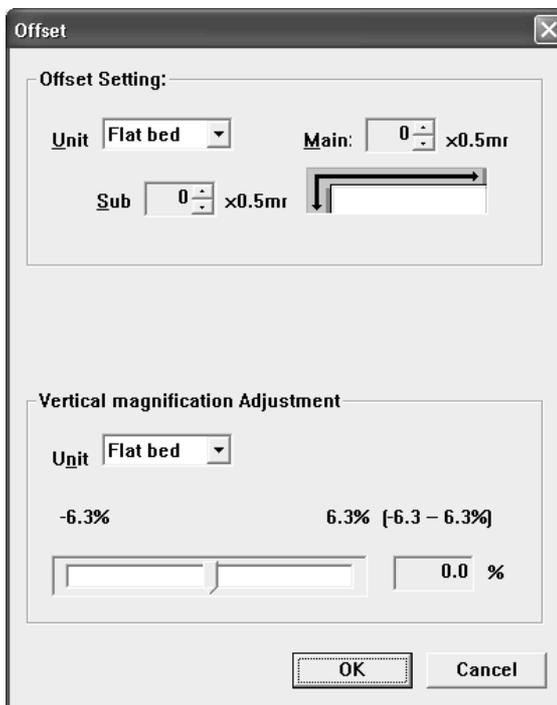


05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional) MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED	PAGE	175/176	
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				

◆ [Offset] button

When this button is clicked, the following dialog box is displayed.

Using this dialog box, the offset of the leading edge and magnification for the sub-scanning direction can be changed.



- Offset Setting:

If the position of the scanned image shifts from the original document, fine adjustment is possible. At shipment, the offset has been adjusted to an optimum value within a certain range. Therefore, adjustment is not generally required.

- Vertical magnification Adjustment

The vertical magnification correction value of sub-scanning direction can be changed. The image is expanded or shrunk in the paper feeding direction based on the setting value at shipment. This function is used to adjust the image whose ratio of length and width seems different from the original document.

- [OK] button

The adjusted value is written to the EEPROM.

A.7 About Tab

The version of this driver and a link to the Fujitsu home page are displayed.

A.8 Color Management Tab Folder

Color profiles assigned to the device can be added or deleted from this folder. "sRGB Color Space Profile.icm" is the default driver assigned to this driver.

05	Oct.17, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	TITLE	fi-5120C / fi-512PR (optional)		
04	July 28, 2006	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.		MAINTENANCE MANUAL		
07	Nov. 26, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.	DRAW. No.	P1PA03484-B00X/6		CUST.
06	Sep.5, 2007	K.Okada	K.Okada	T.Anzai	Refer to Revision Record on page 2.				
Rev	DATE	DESIG.	CHECK	APPR.	DESCRIPTION	PFU LIMITED		PAGE	176/176
DESIG	Aug.19, 2005	K.Okada	CHECK	K.Okada	APPR. T.Anzai				